

Word of God

Jesus Christ

A selection of godly proclamations received
through the 'Inner Word' by Bertha Dudde

Translation handled by Heidi Hanna

Published by Friends of the New Revelation

Hans-Willi Schmitz
St. Bernardinstr. 47
47608 Geldern-Kapellen
Germany

+ + + + + + +

Please take special notice of the fact that God's Words addressed to us are non-denominational. The contents of this publication by no means intends to attract members of any Christian religious affiliation nor to recruit members into any other religious affiliation. Its sole purpose is to make the present-day Word of God accessible to all people.

+ + + + + + +

Source: <https://www.bertha-dudde.org/en>

Table of Contents

5747 Belief in Jesus Christ's mission.... Truthful instruction.....	6
8634 Historic evidence of Jesus and His act of Salvation does not exist.....	7
8963 Do the Gospels correspond to truth?.....	8
Apostasy from God and spiritual darkness – Reason for Jesus' mission.....	10
7067 Act of creating the spiritual beings.....	10
8702 The beings' gradual higher development in Creation.....	12
5802 Adam.... Original spirit.... Lucifer's test.... Bursting the form.....	14
6130 Reason for Christ's birth.... Act of mercy.....	16
The soul and body of Jesus.....	18
6642 Jesus' soul.....	18
8586 What did Jesus' body consist of?.... I.....	19
8620 What did Jesus' body consist of?.... II.....	20
8750 Was Jesus' soul already incarnated before God's human manifestation?.....	21
7250 Evidence of Jesus' existence on earth.....	23
God's human manifestation in Jesus.....	25
8537 'God sent His Son to Earth....'.....	25
8141 And the Word was made flesh.... '.....	26
6719 'I came into the world....'.....	27
7731 God's human manifestation in Jesus.....	28
8250 God and Jesus are one.... Human manifestation of God.....	29
The birth of Jesus.....	31
6673 Answer to questions about the Immaculate Conception and advantages of the souls of light....	31
6951 Jesus came as Saviour.....	34
7237 The birth of Christ.... I.....	35
7780 The light descended to Earth.....	36
Jesus' childhood and adolescence.....	38
3634 'Did you not know, that I must be in My Father's house....'.....	38
5551 Miracle-work of the child Jesus.....	38
8486 Jesus' life before His teaching ministry.....	39
Jesus' battle against temptations.....	42
7056 Jesus' battle against temptations.....	42
7872 Jesus' battle as a 'human being'.....	43
Jesus' teaching and activity of love.....	45
4000 Bible message is teaching of love.... Jesus' explanation.... Transcripts.....	45
6145 Jesus heard the Word of God.... Mediator between God and people.....	46
8454 Jesus taught love on Earth.....	46
5282 Jesus came to the weak, sick and needy.....	48
8308 Jesus' activity on Earth.....	48
Extracts from Jesus' doctrine of love.....	50

2147 'He who remains in love remains in Me and I in him....'	50
3460 'Blessed are the merciful....'	50
3624 'Become as little children....'	51
3767 'I Am the way, the truth, and the life....'	51
3927 The fulfilment of prayer in firm belief.... 'Father, Your will be done....'	52
4360 Parable of the good shepherd.....	53
4408 'No-one can serve two masters....'	53
4580 'I will send you the Comforter....' (Explanation of apparent contradictions).....	54
4662 'Watch and pray, lest ye enter into temptation....'	56
5336 My kingdom is not of this world....'	57
5508 'Come unto Me....'	58
6968 'Seek ye first the kingdom of God....'	58
7057 'I bestow My grace upon the humble....'	59
7075 'Where two or three are gathered....'	60
7501 'I will pour out My spirit upon all flesh....'	61
7702 John 14.... 'I will not leave you comfortless....'	62
8786 'The measure you use will be the measure you receive....'	63
Jesus' references to the end time.....	64
2437 Indications of natural event.... Jesus' reference on earth.....	64
4575 'They ate and drank....' just as it was before the Flood.....	64
4639 'There shall not be left one stone upon another....' Great adversity.....	65
5029 'The powers of the heavens shall be shaken....' Reversal of natural laws.... Rapture.....	66
7225 'I will shorten your days....'	67
Jesus' last supper.....	68
6135 'Take this and eat....'	68
7120 Last Supper – Communion – Love.....	68
7666 Instituted Words.....	69
3740 Do this in remembrance of Me....' Last Supper.....	70
Jesus' fears and the disciples' doubts.....	72
6088 Jesus had prior knowledge of His act.....	72
7278 Tribulations and trepidations of Jesus, the man.....	73
7328 The disciples' doubts after Jesus' arrest.....	74
Jesus' path of suffering and death on the cross.....	75
5643 Good Friday.... The path to Golgotha.....	75
6233 Suffering and dying.....	75
7992 Jesus' free will as a human being.....	76
5092 Christ's suffering.....	77
7083 Good Friday.....	78
7758 Jesus' Words on the cross: 'I Am thirsty....'	79
7764 Jesus' last Words on the cross.....	80
8201 My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?.....	81
8964 Good Friday.....	82

7668 'It is finished....'	83
Jesus' work of redemption.....	84
6513 Atonement of guilt through Jesus Christ.....	84
6600 The crucifixion started a period of Salvation.....	85
7019 The sacrifice on the cross was offered for time and eternity.....	86
8222 Jesus has satisfied God's justice.....	87
Jesus' resurrection.....	88
5934 Resurrection.....	88
6810 Resurrection on the third day.....	88
7086 Jesus' resurrection took the sting out of death.....	90
Jesus' transfiguration – Spiritualisation of Jesus' soul and body.....	92
1739 Jesus' transfiguration.... 'My Father and I are One....'	92
2345 Jesus Christ was dedicated to God body and soul.....	93
8422 Jesus is God.....	93
8574 Spiritualisation of Jesus' body.....	94
7693 Jesus' resurrection and spiritualisation.....	95
Jesus' descent into hell.....	97
6315 'Descent into hell....'	97
6531 Descent into hell.... Lucifer's opposition.....	97
6543 Descent into hell.....	98
Jesus' appearance after his resurrection.....	100
7320 Resurrection on the third day.....	100
7579 Easter.....	101
The ascension of Jesus Christ.....	102
3622 The Ascension of Christ.... Transfiguration.....	102
7358 Jesus' Ascension.....	102
8506 Ascension of Christ.....	103
The outpouring of the spirit.....	105
7148 The disciple's enlightenment only happened after Jesus' crucifixion.....	105
7897 Whitsun experience.....	106
8803 The outpouring of the spirit upon the disciples then and now.....	107
The church of Christ.....	108
8375 The church of Christ in its beginnings.....	108
3297 Remitting or retaining sins.... Jesus' disciples.....	109
4942 'Thou art Peter, the rock, and upon this rock I will build My church....'	110
8836 Acts 7, 55-56.....	111
8890 How long did Christ's doctrine remain pure?.....	112
The second coming of Christ.....	114
3768 Christ's Second Coming.....	114
4847 The process of Christ's return.... Ascension.....	114
6037 The Coming of the Lord (to be understood literally).....	115

Unification with Jesus Christ and following Jesus.....	117
2304 Philosophy of life with Jesus Christ.....	117
3277 Did Jesus Christ redeem all people, or are all people redeemed?.....	117
5844 Acknowledgment or rejection.... Jesus Christ.....	118
5847 Belief in Jesus Christ.... Christ's suffering.....	119
8973 Faith and love lead to unification with God.....	120
6169 Jesus' name defeats the demon.....	121
7035 Strengthening of will through Jesus Christ.... Assessment of will.....	121
7442 Forgiveness of sin through Jesus Christ.....	122
8983 The path under the cross must be taken by all people.....	123
3920 Following Jesus.... A life of love and self-denial.....	124
8017 Low spiritual level.... Test of faith.... Battle.... Rapture.....	125
6363 Contact with Jesus Christ in every adversity.....	126
7622 Following Jesus.... Patiently bearing the cross.....	127
5733 Jesus Christ, leader on the right path.....	127
7129 Call daily upon the name of Jesus.....	128
Redemption by Jesus Christ in the beyond.....	130
6850 Jesus Christ opens the gate to eternal life.....	130
7290 Overcoming the gulf in the beyond: Jesus Christ.....	130
8784 No beatitude without Salvation through Jesus Christ.....	131
6700 Attaining freedom by the time of the end.... Jesus Christ.....	133
6333 Jesus Christ means everything.....	134
8464 God's instruction to educate fellow human beings about Jesus.....	135
4831 Professing Jesus before the world.... Voicing the name of Jesus.....	136

Belief in Jesus Christ's mission.... Truthful instruction....

B.D. No. 5747

August 15th 1953

That which should lead you humans to salvation is conveyed to you by Me. You are in danger of failing in the battle of passing your test of will because you don't use the right means, because your faith is still weak and you don't take the path which guarantees the strengthening of your will.... the path to **Jesus Christ**.... Belief in Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation is the only assured means of passing your test of will, but precisely this belief is lacking in humanity. This is why it must first arise in the human being again, because attaining the goal without **Him** is simply impossible. Therefore the knowledge about Jesus Christ, about His human manifestation and His act of Salvation should first come alive again in people.... they shall be taught correctly what kind of mission Jesus had to fulfil on Earth, why this mission was necessary and why the soul of Jesus, the human being, offered to accomplish this act of Salvation.... **Truthful** knowledge about the divine Redeemer shall be given to people so that their faith can arise and come alive, because this will also ensure that they will reach the goal on earth. In order to instruct people truthfully about **this** problem of God's human manifestation in Jesus Christ, it is furthermore necessary to provide them with further clarification.... about the world and its purpose, about the origin of the living beings and the reason for the entire work of Creation.... The human being shall be able to understand what Jesus Christ's mission consisted of, so that he will subsequently live a meaningful and appropriate life on earth and.... because he is too weak by himself.... avail himself of Jesus Christ's help to do so.... The human being must be taught

truthfully so that he will use his life on earth correctly, so that it will not be lived unsuccessfully, without attaining spiritual perfection, which can certainly be achieved if only he makes use of the right means.

That which Jesus Christ once taught to people as My Word is for many people a Word without life, which they certainly remember on account of their upbringing but which so far has been unable to take effect because it does not reach their hearts. People do not assess this Word, they take offence at distorted teachings and deem themselves entitled to reject everything, they do not allow My Word to come alive through the spirit.... So time and again I try to present My Word such that they can feel the life themselves, so that a longing for being constantly addressed by Me awakens in them.... And I can only do this in a way that every person is offered what is of interest to him, for I also want to win **those** people who are no longer in contact with Me, who don't want to accept anything which until now was known to them as religious knowledge.... who would like to detach themselves from everything and who shall now be caught by Me again.... who I pursue with love in order to motivate them once again to listen to Me and to form an opinion about My Word.... For this I need devoted servants who work on My instructions and according to My will.... who listen to My Words, remember them and pass them on.... I need people who let themselves be guided by their feeling, through which I speak to them Myself.... I need people who do not offer Me resistance, whom I can educate so that they then will be able to work with the received knowledge and indeed do so in realisation of the importance of their task of bringing people My Gospel as a living Word.... just as it came forth from Me.... Only this living Word can awaken life again.... Jesus Christ must be eagerly proclaimed because humanity is in danger of remaining unredeemed, since it no longer wants to acknowledge Him and yet must do so if they are to achieve their task of earthly life.... And this shall be the evidence for the doubters again that it is I Myself Who reveals Himself: that Jesus Christ is **professed** through My Word and that the avowal of Him is demanded of everyone who wants to attain life.... And anyone with the serious will of knowing the truth will find the evidence in the fact that **I Myself** can be recognised as the Giver of a teaching which places Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation at the forefront of anything else and wants to lead people to salvation, which can only be found in Jesus Christ....

Amen

Historic evidence of Jesus and His act of Salvation does not exist....

B.D. No. 8634

October 3rd 1963

People generally regard Jesus' death on the cross as a purely worldly event, providing they believe in His existence in the first place. They regard His death as the execution of a judgment against a troublemaker; they present Him as a court case based on an offence against the authorities by the man Jesus. And these people cannot find redemption through His crucifixion either, because they don't believe that He died in atonement for a grave sin which burdens every person, and from which everyone who believes in Him and His act of Salvation can be released. Therefore, as long as people have no knowledge of the reasons for the act of Salvation, as long as they are unaware of the immense original sin on account of which people live on earth, as long as they don't know the spiritual correlations which explain this said act of Salvation by Jesus, they will not avail themselves of the blessings of this act of Salvation either. They will only ever regard Him as a person who supposedly had a mission, for they have no time at all for this mission. And yet it is of vital importance for a person's life on earth that he professes Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation, that he tries to release himself from His immense original sin which cannot be redeemed without Jesus Christ, and thus also requires the acknowledgment of Jesus Christ in order to become free of it. And precisely the importance of it.... the great significance of acknowledging Jesus as Son of God and Redeemer of the world.... should make you understand why I keep enlightening you about it. This alone should explain My remarkable activity of conveying the truth from above to earth, for no historical evidence can be produced for the sequence of the crucifixion as well as for all accompanying circumstances.... for

Jesus' way of life on earth and His countless miracles, which any person will deny who has no knowledge of the power of the spirit, of the power of love.

People believe mere traditions which were passed on from generation to generation, which cannot be reinforced through evidence and which therefore might just as well be consigned to the realm of fantasy. But time and again people must be informed of the fact that Jesus Christ is their only salvation if they want to enter the realm of blissful happiness after their body's death.... They must be informed of the fact that they do not cease to exist when their body dies and that their state afterwards depends on their attitude towards Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation. Faith in Him is so important that everything needs to be done to make it easy for people to gain this faith. And the quickest possible way is through a truthful portrayal of His life on earth, through clarification about His **mission** which was not based on earthly but instead on spiritual reasons. This also requires the truthful passing on of **knowledge** which explains everything that preceded Jesus' act of Salvation.... Anyone who can be introduced to this knowledge on account of his own willingness to know the truth, will no longer doubt the extremely important mission of Jesus, the human being, and acknowledge Him and His act of Salvation as well as profess Him to his fellowmen. Admittedly, none of this knowledge can be proven to him in an earthly way, but if he accepts the teachings through the spirit he will not doubt them, he will believe them **with conviction**, even **without** evidence, and advocate the truth of it himself. Every person's life on earth is in vain if he does not find Jesus Christ and take the path to the cross. And although it is still possible to accept Him in the kingdom of the beyond, he will nevertheless lose many blessings which he could have used on earth in order to attain the childship to God, which is only possible for him on earth. In the afterlife it is often difficult to receive a little light if the soul is as stubborn as it was on earth and refuses to accept the instructions it is offered by the beings of light. For this reason everything will still be done before the end to bestow upon people the correct understanding of Jesus Christ, wherein you can also recognise the reason for My revelations, for people cannot provide you with the true explanation. However, I will always make sure that the knowledge about Jesus and His act of Salvation is preserved, and I will always correct errors, for only truth is the right light and you will also be able to accept the truth without qualms if you desire it and appeal to Me to give it to you....

Amen

Do the Gospels correspond to truth?....

B.D. No. 8963

April 15th 1965

The question occupying you is understandable if you wish to know the truth. The fact that changes had occurred everywhere cannot be denied, because I do not exert force on a person's free will even if he himself implements changes, partly as a result of wrong translations, but partly also caused by the use of language which differs everywhere and also promotes various interpretations. Even the transcripts of the original text diverge from each other were you to compare them, but they do not distort My teaching, they describe My Words as I had spoken them, because these Words of Mine are and will remain everlasting. But now you desire to know who has been instructed by Me to record My divine teaching of love, as well as My way of life, and I can only reply to this that John.... My favourite disciple.... had the direct order from Me and thus also complied with this task. However, My disciple Matthew, having been likewise capable of writing, also left scripts behind in which he mentioned more factual events, hence he was an equally faithful servant, yet minor discrepancies occurred in his transcripts which, however, cannot be explained such that every scribe saw the same events **differently**, instead, it concerns multiple events, for I have often done the same. Even so, this Gospel is still hidden from you and was replaced by a disciple of the same name who was impelled by the spirit of God, just like the evangelists Luke and Mark, who only during later years wrote down what they had heard about Me and My act of Salvation. You can rest assured that they were influenced by My spirit, otherwise they would never have attempted to tackle such work.... And it will indeed be possible for every spiritually awakened person to recognise these minor discrepancies, which had slipped in later, but he will always be able to keep to My direct Words, since I protect 'My Word' from

being changed. Admittedly, you can also **interpret** these Words of Mine wrongly, which indeed you have done, thereby giving the spoken Word a **different** meaning, but a spiritually awakened person will always recognise them as being wrong.

So if you know that you are allowed to unhesitatingly accept all Gospels as being conveyed by My spirit, as long as you merely assign different periods of time to the process of the transfer, then the Gospel of John was the first one given by Me, because John more or less witnessed everything and was therefore able to describe it in greatest detail. However, the other Gospels can also be unreservedly believed. For they do not contradict each other, merely in the course of time minor changes have occurred which, however, are insignificant and recognisable. If the translators keep firmly to the original text, if they don't change the words according to their linguistic usage, it can also be assumed that the Gospels will remain pure, but the latter should be avoided because it can completely change the meaning. And even the 'expositions' require an awakened spirit.... worldly studies, even if they are of a spiritual nature, are to no avail.... And time and again such 'expositions' arise which deviate from correct thinking, and so many a passage exists which is purely interpreted in a human way, whereas it should only be understood spiritually.... and this always ever concerns passages where clarifications were given.... On account of people's free will I cannot prevent this, nevertheless, wherever possible I protect the Word I have spoken during My life time on earth, so that those of you who want to know the truth may find the right explanation.... For such questions will only be asked by a seriously-minded person who is not satisfied with scriptures of unknown origin and whose questions only prove that he loves the pure truth and therefore also Me Myself, Who is the eternal Truth....

Amen

Apostasy from God and spiritual darkness – Reason for Jesus' mission

Act of creating the spiritual beings....

B.D. No. 7067

March 17th 1958

It is My will that you shall be enlightened where darkness prevails. People who don't question cannot receive answers, but those who want to know and turn to Me Myself will receive My reply so that they will learn to recognise Me in My love and wisdom and grant their love to Me.... The act of creating the spiritual beings was a spiritual process which will only be understandable to you humans when you enter the kingdom of light. As long as you live on earth it can only be roughly outlined to you according to your level of understanding. Nevertheless, it will not divert from the truth, but it will lack both the deeper reasons as well as the infinitely many intermediate processes which, however, would not contribute towards your enlightenment either. However, you can rest assured that I will not let your thinking become confused, since you only wish to be instructed in the truth. When I created the first being I was only motivated by the thought of creating a vessel for Myself which was intended to assimilate My ceaselessly outpouring strength of love.... because My infinite love wanted to give itself and only ever provide happiness.... My strength of love constantly brought forth all kinds of spiritual creations. Therefore I also wanted to create something that corresponded to Me Myself, thus an image of Me. And My will came to pass a being of supreme perfection arose beside Me which was pleasing to Me, which was indescribably beautiful, it was an image of Myself which from then on was so permeated by My strength of love that it was equally able to be creatively active without limitation. And just as the source of My strength of love had motivated Me into shaping a receiving vessel into which it could flow, the same will and desire also arose in this being to make use of the constant influx of My love's strength and, likewise, to let beings arise from within itself. Thus the same process repeated itself, because I wanted to let this first-created being participate in the incredible bliss of giving life to like-natured beings, for as an 'image' of Myself it was imbued with the same feelings, it was overflowing with love, and the strength it constantly received from Me did not keep the being inactive either.... which resulted in this very process of creating countless beings.... Hence these created beings could **not be different** from My first-created being.... they were supremely perfect, brightly radiant and overwhelmingly powerful spirits which all corresponded to the image I had externalised. Through My influx of strength, which made the act of creating these beings possible in the first place, I was therefore also their 'Creator', although the will of the first-created being had to avail itself first of this strength of Mine. Hence **all** beings emerged from Me and My first image.... and all beings possessed the same creative power. But **My will** was also active in all originally created beings, the host of originally created spirits were inflamed with burning **love** for Me, because My fire of love was their fundamental element, they had been the products of purest love and therefore all created beings were also positively inclined towards Me....

Endless times passed by in most blissful harmony and a constant exchange of love.... and this state need never have changed. But then the process of creating took on a different form.... which should only be understood in a spiritual sense. This was triggered by the desire of My first-created being, the bearer of light, to see Me. The being's love for Me was still unchanged and therefore it desired to behold Me even though it knew that I, as the 'centre of strength and light' could not be visible to My created beings, which would have ceased to exist in view of My abundance of light.... it would have consumed the created beings.... which were sparks of My light.... and thus a beholding of Me was not **possible**. And because it was unable to behold Me the thought flashed up in it to become independent from Me and more or less present itself to the host of originally created being as 'Creator itself'.... a thought which arose as a consequence of the desire to see Me **despite better knowledge**. As an attribute of perfection all beings also possessed free will which, however, always corresponded to My

will. And this free will allowed for the said mental confusion.... Thus the bearer of light, Lucifer, was not prevented by Me from aiming his will in the wrong direction. Even so, the process of creation started to falter, that is, as long as his will no longer harmonised with Mine he more or less closed himself off to the flow of My love, yet always just temporarily, for at first his resistance was so small that love nevertheless came through again and he utterly devoted himself to Me once more, which then also resulted in an unabated flow of My strength of love and thus continued creative activity. But time and again the wrong thoughts kept emerging in him because he did not confide them in Me Myself so that I could have refuted them.... For he temporarily excluded Me without realising that he thereby lessened his strength.... As soon as he loosened the bond with Me through wrongly inclined thoughts the inflow of strength of love also lessened; however, he did not realise this in view of the countless multitude of spirits he had already called into existence through his will and the use of My strength.... Time and again it must be emphasised that My strength enabled him to create the beings in the first place and that only his love for Me gave him the strength.... so it is understandable, that a **reduction** of his love also reduced the influx of strength. And at the same time, every created being was also the **proof** of Lucifer's connection with Me.... thus no other being could arise after Lucifer consciously separated from Me, on account of which all created beings belong to Me as well, for they are 'My emanated strength of love'. And yet a large proportion of all created beings had fallen away from Me.... And that justifies the question as to whether the beings differed in their fundamental substance....

I only externalised **one** being as an independent entity.... And this being was created in My image. Consequently, all spiritual beings which were brought into existence by this being had to entirely correspond to Me and My image again.... They were the same perfect, most radiantly shining living creations, for only something supremely perfect was able to emerge from our mutual love and will, which both corresponded to each other.... beings, which were by no means inferior to the first-created bearer of light.... Hence they were equally extremely powerful and ablaze with burning love for Me, even though they were unable to behold Me. Nevertheless, they recognised Me, for I also revealed Myself to them through the Word. It was an infinitely large number of spirits which glorified Me and sang My praises, which, in reverence, were willing to serve Me and which were only ever active according to **My** will, thus they were images of Me Myself. And this indescribably happy multitude of spirits should have increased the light bearer's love for Me ever more.... Yet various feelings in him began to oppose each other: He saw the gloriously radiating beings and desired to behold Me as well.... Since he was visible to the beings he deemed himself superior to Me and no longer wanted to acknowledge Me as the One from Whom everything had emerged, despite the fact that he **knew** that he, too, had originated from Me. Conscious of the strength permeating him, he began to separate himself from the source of strength.... a process which lasted for an infinitely long time because the desire for happiness repeatedly pushed him back to Me and therefore he repeatedly received strength again for the creation of new beings. And so these beings, too, consisted of the same fundamental substance, namely of My emanated strength of love; however the sporadic separation from Me also influenced the process of creation to a certain extent, insofar as those beings' will and love was more inclined towards their maker than Me.... but I neither tried to influence these beings nor the bearer of light. Yet they were equally enlightened, they recognised Me as their Creator and were therefore also able to make the **right** decision in free will when this important decision was demanded of them.

My first-created being was connected with **all** beings produced by him, just as I was inseparably linked with all beings because My strength of love had to permeate them were they to continue to exist. My adversary tried to maintain the connection with his created beings even after his will was already opposing Mine.... that is, he also inspired the **first** spirits into turning away from Me and a number of of them succumbed to his temptation, Lucifer also pulled them into the abyss and their realisation should have truly made them abhor his disgraceful plan. And their sin was far greater still, therefore, their path of return will also be considerably more difficult.... whereas the majority of the first-created beings remained with Me when the followers of My present adversary detached themselves from Me. The hidden resistance with which Lucifer started to oppose Me resulted in the fact that an infinitely large host of created spirits decided partly for and partly against Me when the

test of will was expected of them. For the resistance disturbed the hitherto integrated whole.... My former image was no longer governed by the **same** will, the **same** love, it had caused a rift and this division was also felt by the beings which had emerged from our love, which were now like their maker, even though My strength was involved in their creation. But since this resistance had not been present in the first-created spiritual being, since the light bearer's love and will were completely merged with Mine, it was only possible for such beings to emerge from our love which utterly corresponded to us, whose brilliant abundance of light and unlimited strength were true images of Me Myself as well as of the being which I had externalised from Me in My love.... and which also, with a few exceptions, remained with Me. And the same process occurred in the latter as happened in Lucifer: free will aimed in the wrong direction.... they desired to see their God and Creator and drew the wrong conclusions from My necessary invisibility by acknowledging that which was 'visible' to them as their 'God', who then exalted himself and drew countless beings to himself, which all detached themselves volitionally from Me and thereby plunged into the abyss....

Once all created beings glowed with light and strength, because nothing could have arisen without the flow of My love's strength. The reduced emanation of light only began with Lucifer's reduced love for Me, but this did not mean that these beings were lacking the light of realisation, for at the moment of creating the beings My strength of love also permeated the maker of all the beings again; but these moments became increasingly less frequent until he voluntarily rebelled against Me and was no longer able to receive any influx of strength because he rejected it by believing himself to be just as powerful as Me.... And then his state of mind became dark as well.... He.... who once had been in My image.... became My direct opposite, his nature reversed completely, he had sunk into the deepest abyss and his followers with him, whom he regarded as his supposed power and strength. The highest being, having emerged from My love, had sunk the lowest, because it misused its free will, the characteristic of divine origin.... And it was left up to every being to aim this will in My or his direction, every being was **able** to pass the test of will because every being possessed the light of realisation and also had the strength at its disposal to resist the urging for its maker.... But neither will every fallen being ever lose My love, for My love let it arise and My love will never ever let it perish again, but until it surrenders its resistance it will not be able to feel My love and thus remain wretched. However, one day its resistance will diminish and the being will look for My love again and consciously take the path of return to Me.... Then it will recognise My inconceivable love, it will recognise its God and Creator in Jesus Christ, in Whom I Myself became for all beings the visible God, Whom they desired to see and Who prepared for them the path of return into the Father's house....

Amen

The beings' gradual higher development in Creation....

B.D. No. 8702

December 17th 1963

And thus listen to the following: When I transformed the beings, which I had once emanated as strength, into many different kinds of works of creation, it started the gradual higher development of these beings in their dissolved state.... At first it was an incredible mass of spiritual substance which slowly took on form when My will solidified the spiritual strength into matter, and this matter was so differently natured again that it cannot be made understandable to you humans. According to My wisdom and My love I had devised a plan of Salvation for the fallen spirits which was to be implemented in the creation. The purpose of My creation was to induce the bound spiritual substances within to be of service, thus one work of creation was needed for another in order to make it possible for a gradual higher development to take place. The serving functions at the beginning of creation cannot be made conceivable to you humans.... only when the works of creation became somewhat more solidified some activity, albeit very slight, commenced. And every activity testifies to life, every activity achieves a change, therefore the forms also changed constantly, developing into ever larger works of creation, each one of which had to fulfil a task determined by My will and which was also carried out according to My will, because the spiritual substance was unable to resist My will. Therefore the creation did not arise in an instant through My will, instead, the spiritual

substances, or 'transformed strength', bound therein covered a slow path of development so that its resistance gradually subsided which manifested itself in being of service which, admittedly, still happened under My law of compulsion but nevertheless proved a reduction of opposition.... And so the process of higher development through the mineral, plant and animal world until the stage of a human being, has been explained to you such that the external forms constantly released the bound spiritual substances within, which linked up in order to take abode in a larger form again and continue their service, until all tiny particles belonging to a fallen original spirit had come together again and were able to embody themselves as 'soul' in a human being.... But just as it happens in the animal world, that, after dying, the smallest living organisms join other spiritual substances of the same degree of development and enter a larger external shape, so the process of development continued, and My love and My wisdom constantly created new forms which were able to accept the destined spiritual substance.... In nature you look upon this as 'evolution' of a small living being into an ever larger one.... Yet first I had to create a new form which previously had not yet existed. And although these forms constantly became larger and resembled the previous forms, it always involved an act of creation on My part which, however, could not be observed by people because no-one endowed with intellect and free will populated the earth as yet.

However, My eternal plan was definite, therefore I also knew about the living creation which was intended to live on earth as a 'human being' for the purpose of taking its final test of will.... And thus the spiritual substances which were still bound in the various works of creation were continuously placed into new creations the closer the individual being's spiritual substance approached maturity.... The works of creation became increasingly larger.... which is not to be understood in terms of physical size but the individual living being's constitution, their functions and their abilities are referred to in this instance.... Yet each new living creature was the work of My infinite love and wisdom and omnipotence.... which subsequently reproduced itself but always remained the same creation as I had externalised it.... Do understand that no living being will change its constitution, and where you believe you notice a change or further development, its emergence has been an act of creation on My part. Thus every human-like creature inhabiting the earth before the creation of the first human being always were new creations which, however, remained the species they were created as a product of My omnipotence. And since the bound spiritual substance within them constantly developed further, My will also created an increasingly **more** human-like external form, yet this creation was always based on **My will**, which manifested itself as **natural law** again.... what you humans now describe as the natural evolution of the beings.... But the **human being** can never be regarded as a product of natural evolution, for he is a separate creation, having emerged from My omnipotence, love and wisdom and being designed such that he shall and is able to fulfil an eminent task on earth. Even if you try to train the most intelligent animals to think and decide independently you will never succeed, for the abilities possessed by a human being are not hidden in any animal, for the human being is the only life form on earth in possession of thinking ability, intellect and free will.... which can never be slowly developed nor are they attributes of a creature's gradual higher development, instead it merely proves that the human being is a work of creation in its own right, called into being through My will and My power in order to accomplish a task. And it was only possible to place the creation work 'man' into the world after the once fallen original spirits had already covered the gradual higher development through the creations because the human being was intended to shelter one such fallen original spirit within himself as soul. The word 'development' only ever applies to the sheltering or bound spiritual substance in every work of creation which has to go through this upward development, whereas the material works of creation must always be regarded as acts of creation, because My will brought these external forms into existence in order to serve the spiritual substance as external shapes, which themselves should advance through being of service.

The fact that **My will** simultaneously also signifies '**natural law**', which no work of creation can resist as long as it does not yet shelter a spiritually mature being like people do, will also explain the word 'development'.... but it will never justify the allegation that the human being evolved by himself.... for he was a separate work of creation which My will and My strength of love brought into life....

Anyone who strives to arrive at the truth leaves all darkness behind him, he will have an explanation for everything, he will know the correlation between all things, he will recognise that his path leads upwards, that he has found the connection with God, that he cannot err anymore because God Himself conveys the truth to him. But striving for the truth means that it first has to be sincerely desired, and then the knowledge he receives.... be it from outside or from within in the form of thoughts.... has to be accepted with an open heart. For the heart will be willing to either accept or reject truth and error and thus influence the person accordingly.

Truth has to be aspired to in so far as that the human being's will has to be actively involved.... it cannot simply be given to a completely passive person who does not want it himself and who will not take the necessary steps in order to gain it. For then he will remain in spiritual darkness and not achieve progress. Truth, however, is the ascending path.... Truth is the spiritual knowledge conveyed to people by God Himself which tries to find a recipient in every human being, which can be acquired by every person's will since it can be imparted to people in many different ways.... but it always has to be desired first. But anyone who has gained the truth no longer lives in darkness, everything is crystal clear to him, he no longer doubts, for whatever is still unclear will be explained to him when he asks for it providing he turns to the source of truth.... providing he submits his doubts and questions to God Himself and then awaits God's answer through his heart.... The desire for truth, the mental contact with God and his inward listening also ensures him a clear and truthful answer. You humans should know that no unsolved questions need to exist for you providing you just want an explanation and present every question to the One Who is truth Himself and Who also wants to impart it to His children in order to enlighten them, in order to illuminate their path of ascent:

The body of the first-created human being was also an act of creation by My love. I **then** had to create an external shell for the fallen spirit once it had worked its way up from the abyss to a point where it was able to undertake its final test of will in complete freedom.... I had to create forms for all My once created original spirits whose previously dissolved substances had come together again after an infinitely long period of time and who, therefore, as self-aware beings once more, were waiting for permission to become active.... Creating the external form of such an original spirit was no **different** than the countless many works of creation which had previously arisen.... it was My externalised thought which, through My will, appeared before Me already completed. But giving life to this created form was only possible by permeating it with My strength of love....

The originally created spirit, however, **was** My emanated strength of love.... Hence it only needed to take possession of the external form in order to turn it into a living being. The spirit was close to its perfection.... and yet far from it because it lacked final realisation.... because the sin with which it was burdened had completely deprived it of all knowledge and in this state it needed instruction and commandments.... thus it was to gradually mature into realisation by complying with these commandments.... A great spiritual battle had taken place earlier because a large number of fallen original spirits wanted to occupy My first created form.... For they knew that they could only gain access to Me again in the body of a human being, that they would only be able to gain unimaginable abundance of strength and light through a test of life in which they were to prove how they would utilise the strength at their disposal.... But I Myself chose **which** original spirit should take abode in the first human being.... For only I knew whose opposition to Me had weakened such that the final test of earthly life could be imposed on him; I knew whose will could have resisted My adversary's power. Therefore I chose an original spirit which had once taken a leading position during the spirits' apostasy.... which was indeed more heavily burdened by sin but which My love very much endeavoured to regain, for countless beings would likewise have followed it and the redemption would have progressed far more rapidly.... I have known, in fact, since eternity that this original spirit

would fail.... Nevertheless, due to its changed will during the preliminary stages it was the strongest spirit, thus it was also **entitled** to be the **first** to receive the state of free will, and which therefore offered the best prospects of passing the test of will....

The form of the first human being was.... before this original spirit occupied it, also visible to Lucifer, who certainly knew that this form was the gate from the kingdom of darkness, from his realm, into My kingdom, into the kingdom of light.... He also knew that.... if he didn't want to lose his followers.... he had to use every means to wrest the souls back from Me during the human being's approved probationary period, in order to turn the test to his advantage....

My created form was still without life when Lucifer seized it in order to test it by animating it with his spirit.... yet his untamed spirit burst the form, and he was sure that every spirit banished into this form would burst it and that there would never be any danger of loss for him....

I allowed this test to happen and then proved to him that his assumption was wrong.... For due to its long process of development the **very** spirit which was to embody itself in the human being no longer shared Lucifer's will, it willingly occupied the final external form, and since this original spirit was close to its original state it did not consider the external form a shackle to prevent the fall into sin.... For it was master over all of creation, it could rule like a lord over the earth which was at its disposal with every creation.... It had abundant might and strength.... only subordinate to My might, which only gave it an easy commandment, the obedience to which would have broken any constraint imposed on it....

And when Lucifer realised this he thought about ways to stop the human being from obeying this commandment, and since he knew the first human being's body he tried to make him dislike it by portraying it as a shackle.... by making freedom from it dependent on **transgressing** this commandment.... and thus incited the original spirit to inwardly revolt against Me again for not having given it complete freedom.... It was a deliberate deception which the first human being could have resisted by merely adhering to My simple commandment.... if he had been satisfied with his possession of might and strength which made him truly happy until My adversary aroused an impure desire in him.... to be greater than the One, Who was a perceptible power above him.... of Whom he knew and Whose commandment he nevertheless disregarded....

The first human being's fall into sin was therefore a repetition of the original spirit's first fall. It followed Lucifer and drew innumerable beings into the abyss with him.... just as all descendants of the first human being were afterwards also placed into the weak state of sinful people until Jesus Christ came to their rescue, until Jesus Christ acquired the strength of will on behalf of humanity through His crucifixion, until Jesus Christ opposed Lucifer's temptations with His strong will and defeated him....

Nothing could have induced the first-created being, Lucifer, to cover the earthly progress as a human being as long as he still considered himself lord of the spiritual world which had deserted Me with him, for he himself did **not** take the course through matter, through creation, before the creation of the first human being.... As a spiritually tangible spirit he was volitionally still My strongest opponent, he deemed himself lord over the creation which sheltered the spiritual substance that belonged to him, although he himself had no influence over it. His inner resistance was still unbroken, and he would never ever have put up with any coercion, he would never voluntarily have entered a form created by My will.... because he hated all forms for the spiritual substances, all works of creation, and sought to destroy them.... However, his power over the works of creation had been taken away from him, but then he was granted influence over the soul when this was to make its free decision again for Me or for him.... He also knew that he was unable to destroy a form himself once it was inhabited by spiritual beings, and for this reason he inspected the first human being's form **in advance**, for his goal was to induce the original spirit which was to occupy it to destroy its own external form.... because he believed that he would thereby provide it with the freedom which I had taken away from the spirits due to the works of creation.... He wanted to stop Me from completing the plan of Salvation.

The opposition between Myself and him existed ever since his apostasy and will never be given up by him until he realises that he is completely powerless, and in profound weakness and humility

appeals to Me to give him strength.... For this reason it would have been impossible to give **him** the first human body as an abode. For his will did not aim for ascent, whereas the past resistance to Me by the spiritual essence, having passed through creation in the state of compulsion, had already diminished and it was merely to prove just once more that it had abandoned its opposition to Me and My strength of love. And Lucifer knew how far this spiritual essence had already distanced itself from him, and he also knew that there now was a risk of losing it entirely. And since the original spirit embodied in the first human being had once been his staunch supporter he was particularly interested to bring it to fall.... But he also knew of its present desire to become free from every physical restraint....

And then I placed a second being at this original spirit's side, which simultaneously was to support but also help him with the test of his will. Each one could have supported the other to arrive at the final objective; I did not place the responsibility on one shoulder **alone**.... I gave the commandment to both, and both were able to attain the goal together.... And this second being was used by Lucifer, who recognised its weak will and thereby hoped to achieve his objective.... The test of will had to be demanded from the first human couple, and in support of this test adverse forces also had to be active, for Lucifer fought for his living creations too, which he did not want to surrender even though they belonged to Me as well. His plan succeeded, nevertheless, it did not stop Me from giving countless beings time and again the opportunity to take on a new form in the human beings of this earth and thus to achieve an ever higher degree of maturity even if, due to the fall of the first human couple, the gate to the kingdom of light remained closed until the arrival of Jesus Christ....

The first sin had delayed but not cancelled the spiritual beings' redemption, for what the first human being had failed to do was achieved by the human being Jesus.... He was stronger than My adversary for He availed Himself of My strength.... He was and stayed in contact with Me through love and voluntarily accomplished what the first human beings did not fulfil as a commandment.... He completely subordinated Himself to My will and proved His devotion to Me through His suffering and death on the cross.... He knew of the original sin and the first human beings' repeated guilt, and in order to cancel this guilt, in order to redeem humankind, He offered to bring Me a sacrifice, which was satisfactory to Me.... a sacrifice, which opened the gate to the spiritual kingdom again, the path to Me, and now enables all My living beings who acknowledge Him as Son of God and Redeemer of the world to become blissfully happy once more....

Amen

Reason for Christ's birth.... Act of mercy....

B.D. No. 6130

December 9th 1954

Full of mercy I looked down to earth upon the enslaved human race.... I saw their immense adversity, nevertheless, even though it was self-inflicted I also saw people's great weakness whose burden had put such pressure on them that they were no longer able to get up by themselves.... And My love became so powerful that it wanted to bring help to the suffering human race.... My love was so great that I Myself descended to Earth in order to liberate people from their burden of sin and to open the path to Me again for them. My coming down to Earth was an act of love and mercy by your Creator and Father of eternity.... I wanted to bring peace to people, Salvation.... I wanted to enable them to enjoy light and strength again which they had lost due to the sin of their past rebellion against Me.... Humanity was so steeped in darkness that it was no longer capable of finding its way out since it was also totally powerless.... It was in a state of utter wretchedness, for they were held captive by a lord who exerted control over them, who had no intention of ever setting them free again.... But I was also entitled to you because you once emerged from My strength of love.... And I will not give up My entitlement I was ready to fight for you against My adversary and I came to Earth not because the **Deity** but **love** wanted to wage this battle which subsequently embodied itself in a human being.... thus, to a certain extent, a human being took up the battle against the adversary, Who only used love as a weapon.... hence love waged the battle.... Love motivated Me to descend to Earth in order to take

abode in Jesus, the man.... Whose soul was utterly devoted to Me, Who aspired towards union with Me with all His heart and mind, Who sheltered the soul of light in Himself which wanted to help its fallen brothers to return to the Father, to higher spheres again in order to be happy.... That which had remained perfect wanted to help those who had become imperfect attain perfection again.... Love Itself wanted to use Itself in order to bring freedom to the enslaved people.... For this reason I Myself came down to Earth, this is why I no longer closed My ears to the calls of distress which raised up to Me from Earth, I came as the Saviour and Redeemer in order to bring peace to everyone of good will.... For the time had come when humanity had sunk so low that it had to be helped were it not to completely fall prey to ruin. And thus came to pass what had long been announced before.... The light came to Earth and shone into the darkness.... But the darkness did not comprehend it and there were only a few who recognised it as the Saviour Who was sent from above in order to redeem humanity and to bring peace to all people of good will....

Amen

The soul and body of Jesus

Jesus' soul....

B.D. No. 6642

September 11th 1956

Everything conveyed to you by My spirit will concur in its meaning.... It is certainly left up to people's own will to assign a different meaning to the Words My spirit reveals to you, in which case **such** a person is **not** spiritually enlightened, nevertheless, it cannot be claimed that contradictory spiritual knowledge was conveyed to you by **Me**. For the 'Spirit of God' does not err.... And where an apparent contradiction appears to be present clarification needs to be requested; I Myself must be approached for an explanation:.... The soul of the human being Jesus came from above.... A spirit of light descended to Earth, a being which had come forth from Me and remained with Me entirely of its own free will when a large host of created spirits fell away from Me and plunged into the abyss.... But this spirit of light had to fulfil a mission **as a human being**, He had to descend into an unenlightened region, thus he had to leave his abundance of light behind to begin with, which merely would have had a disastrous effect since the people on earth were incapable of accepting such a light from above, thus they would have perished in its radiance. A **human being** had to accomplish the mission.... the act of Salvation for humanity.... And this person had to be in the same environment as his fellow human beings, for the point was to show them a path, to exemplify a way of life to them which they should follow.... Consequently, Jesus, the human being, had to be **just as** human as they were.... And so He was, despite the fact that the soul had descended from the kingdom of light.... The soul, which sheltered in the body of the infant Jesus, was just as influenced in its thinking, wanting and feeling by its earthly shell like any other human being.... Thus, due to its surrounding environment as well as its external shell, the same passions and cravings had to be awakened, for to live earthly life as a 'human being' also meant having to fight against the same instinct from within and outside.... After all, the point was to strive towards spiritualising the soul, to achieve the unity of the soul with its spirit, which is the purpose and goal of every person's earthly life.... It was necessary to provide people with the proof that it was **possible** to achieve this spiritualisation on earth....

And so Jesus, the human being, fought and struggled in the same way.... which therefore necessitated a similar natured soul.... which had nevertheless descended from the kingdom of light in order to be able to serve God Himself as an abode, Who would never ever have been able to manifest Himself in a **sinful** soul.... For Jesus' soul was **without sin**, but this does not mean that it was entirely devoid of instincts and passions, for no matter how strong these weaknesses and passions of His were, no matter how strong the temptations approaching Him were, He resisted and was able to resist them because His love was also strong and this gave Him the strength for resistance. The soul of Jesus, the human being, left the light behind and entered the darkness.... And countless earthbound souls adhered to this soul, thus they besieged it in the same way that every human soul is besieged by dark forces.... Since Jesus had to travel the path as a human being, the soul was unable to push these beings away, instead it had to try to overcome them by means of a demanding battle, it had to muster the will not to **give in** when it was tempted. It was able to muster this will by virtue of the love it had **not** left behind, which was and remained its share because it was divine strength, with the help of which Jesus, the man, was intended and able to accomplish His mission.... but which would also enable **every** person to be victorious if only he would kindle and nourish the love in himself.... Time and again it must be stressed that the act of Salvation had to be accomplished by a **human being**, that Jesus at first should only be regarded as a human being, Who succeeded in spiritualising Himself on earth.... and that this human being had therefore entirely subordinated himself to natural law, that His physical body was like that of every other human being and that His soul was not allowed to defend itself either when impure spirits took possession of it.... However, at no time did He allow these spirits to gain the upper

hand, because His will prevented this and because through love He also managed to find the necessary strength. Nevertheless, He had to struggle like every other person, for He should and wanted to be a shining example to them, He wanted to show them the path which they, too, could take in order to spiritualise themselves while still being on Earth. For only that which was also humanly possible could be expected of people.... If Jesus would have had strength at His disposal which was entirely impossible for people to acquire, He would never have been able to say: 'Follow Me....' Yet this never excludes the fact that His soul came from above, that it had been a soul of light, in which God Himself took abode and was able to do so because it was pure and without sin, since love gave it strength to resist all temptations....

Amen

What did Jesus' body consist of?.... I.

B.D. No. 8586

August 14th 1963

Nothing is impossible to Me, your God and Creator.... Everything I want, happens, and what I want to create instantly appears in front of Me as an accomplished thought.... I have no limitations, neither concerning ideas nor executed actions, be they of spiritual or material substance. For basically **everything** is spiritual substance, regardless of whether you see physical or spiritual creations. But how this substance is natured can only be judged by Me Myself.... Only I know whether it is spiritual substance which had once fallen away from Me and had hardened into solid matter or whether it is My directly emanated spiritual strength which took on a shape according to My will, for I can use any strength to change or form all kinds of works of creations. I can also give My directly emanated strength those characteristics which cling to the sinful spiritual being if it, in its final form as a human being, shelters a soul for the purpose of attaining perfection.... A body created by Me of non-sinful spiritual substances can, through **My will**, experience a state of weakness or incorporate characteristics which adhere to all other bodies if it serves a specific purpose.... **Everything** is within **My will** and within **My power**.... But through contact with the world, with matter.... which is impure spiritual substance.... everything of a pure, divine nature will always be influenced by the latter and experience problems, and since Jesus' act of Salvation involved an extraordinarily important mission, impure adverse forces made a special effort to exert influence on the purely Divine, Jesus' external form. For this divine-spiritual emanation of strength, which His body has to be regarded as, did not take effect by destroying or preventing everything of an adverse nature.... instead, it was sufficient to render the same resistance, like any other external form should, by pacifying the encroaching spiritual substances and thus waging the same battle against all temptations, for as a human being Jesus wanted to **exemplify** the kind of life which **all** fellow human beings should live in order to release themselves from the forces of darkness.

However, the fact that Jesus' body consisted of earthly matter cannot be denied: nevertheless, this earthly matter was a product of My love, wisdom and might, its substance was not taken from a fallen spirit but My emanated strength which My will compressed into shape.... Even so, the demands it imposed on Jesus were by no means less arduous, for as soon as strength from Me comes to earth.... hence, as soon as perfect spirit enters My adversary's realm, it will be besieged by unspiritual substances and all substances which clung to Jesus' soul and more or less took possession of the body were meant to be redeemed. Thus He had to fight so as not to succumb to them but without using His strength beyond human means since He was meant to serve people as an example and, therefore, Jesus the man was not granted any privilege due to extraordinary strength.... As a human He had to be like all other people, and even the fact that His body was a product of My strength did not give Him any advantages in His striving for deification.... It was nothing more than a shackle which continuously tormented His soul, because it was used to freedom and the brightest of light and had to take abode in darkness.... And this darkness also inundated the body, causing it much pain which was felt by the soul and yet it could not be spared for the body. For as a result of His love Jesus recognised all correlations and was resigned to His fate, which He exactly foresaw and through which alone He already endured indescribable pain. Nevertheless, complete deification **could** only be achieved by extraordinary

suffering and an abundance of love.... And the fact alone that a pure body without sin and a soul from the kingdom of light had to reside in the realm of the prince of darkness contributed towards that, because they constantly had to defend themselves against him and his forces, which made every effort to tempt the body into becoming sinful in order to cause the downfall of Jesus, the human being, albeit he did not succeed. However, it was a hard fight, and yet, Jesus the man prevailed and thus provided all people with proof that through love they **also** acquire the strength in order to resist all temptations by the adversary. Besides, through His crucifixion He also acquired the grace of greater willpower for you humans, so that it is **possible** for all people to release themselves from the shackle of their prison warden, so that they will not be at the adversary's mercy but find help in Jesus Christ in Whom they can confide and Who nevertheless understands them as human beings and will truly snatch them from the adversary's control if they appeal to Him, for He knows how much he torments your body in order to prevent your soul from maturing.... He is aware that the battle in earthly life is hard because the body still belongs to the adversary, who does not want to release it, but Jesus made the sacrifice on the cross for you so that you can become free, He redeemed you through His blood so that you will be released from all sin....

Amen

What did Jesus' body consist of?.... II.

B.D. No. 8620

September 18th 1963

(Supplement regarding B.D. 8586)

You need never fear misguided teachings if you turn to Me directly for clarification. I will always provide you with the correct explanation as soon as something is incomprehensible to you. For you, who shall spread the truth, must also be able to refute every objection, you yourselves must know how everything relates to each other, otherwise you cannot be true representatives of the truth.... And thus you should also know that all matter is solidified spiritual substance.... spiritual strength, which was once emanated by Me as a being and did not fulfil its actual purpose.... because these beings refused to be active according to My will. As a result of this refusal the spiritual substance hardened, that is, it solidified and I gave shape to this substance.... The hardened substance became matter....

However, by virtue of My power I can also let matter arise which has not first gone through the process of hardening of spiritual substance.... By virtue of My will I can solidify spiritual strength into a form.... This is what I did in order to create a cover of flesh for Myself which, however, was not meant to be any different from that of any other human being, with the exception that it did not originate from My adversary's realm but I joined the spiritual substance directly to creation, so that it indeed took the path through the creations which matter has to take in order to carry out its serving functions and thereby gradually develops to the stage where it shall serve as an abode for a soul....

Every person's cover of flesh is still at the initial stage of development, it is not yet spiritualised and after a person's death it must generally still travel a very long path of development until it may shelter as part of a soul in a body.... The time the spiritual substance needed in order to serve a soul as a body was also granted by Me to this solidified strength in order to travel the path through the creations until it was permitted to serve Jesus as an external form. For this soul required a body which was of the same consistency as any other human body, because He wanted to spiritualise this body as well and because, through His body, He was also subject to all temptations by immature spirit which had hoped to gain influence over the soul through the body.

Thus, His body's substance was effectively **non-fallen** spirit, yet it had travelled through the realm of the fallen spirits, the body likewise belonged to the creation which shelters the fallen beings and during this path of development had to prove itself already by experiencing and enduring the pain of its bound, constrained state.... which was part of Jesus' act of Salvation as well, nevertheless also contributed towards the complete spiritualisation of Jesus' body.... For as a result of the process through creation the body was as similarly natured as any other human body, and Jesus the man had to fight the same battles against cravings and weaknesses, and yet the body was without sin because it

was intended to serve Me as an abode and I already dwelled in Jesus the infant and at times also proved it to Jesus.

It must be understandable to you that Jesus' spiritualised body could not have belonged to another original spirit, that I therefore took care of this physical body Myself and that it was an act of My power and wisdom.... but that, on the other hand, its nature had to be such that its spiritualisation could also take place in order to substantiate the process of His resurrection and to give people the incentive to strive for the body's spiritualisation as well. For this purpose the individual substances of Jesus' body took the path through the works of creation too and endured the torment of constraint, so that Jesus' act of Salvation would be a complete and utter success.... For then the external immature forces exerted influence on Jesus the man, they tried to entice the still weak bodily substances to become sinful, yet Jesus resisted them, He fought against all temptations and silenced the body's every craving, so truly, His battle was not an easy one despite the fact that he was without sin.... Nothing was spared Him precisely because He wanted to exemplify to his fellow human being how to live, He wanted to provide the evidence that it is possible for **every** person to achieve the same.... to spiritualise body **and** soul....

Nevertheless, even if it is not yet entirely comprehensible to you, you should believe that Jesus' body and soul were without sin and that precisely because of this Jesus had to suffer far more, because He had entered a sinful region and had to succeed in the harshest battle on earth a person will ever have to go through, for everything of an earthly nature besieged His body and His soul, and only His greater than great love stood up to these pressures, for Jesus, the human being, sheltered the fullness of 'God' within Him and together with Me He was victorious and broke the adversary's power....

Amen

Was Jesus' soul already incarnated before God's human manifestation?....

B.D. No. 8750

February 11th 1964

Time after time I want to reveal My love for you by introducing you to knowledge which will make you very happy, because like a bright light it will unveil things to you which previously were obscured by darkness.... and because your degree of awareness will be raised again, which also signifies a maturing of the soul. For love always will and has to be the foundation for the conveyance of My Word, I could not address you if a certain degree of love were not present, and thus this love will let the light of realisation shine ever more brightly within you. You are still occupied by questions which only I Am able to answer, because only I know the regions you wish to understand better:

All elevated, previously **not-fallen** spirits also incarnate on earth in order to take the path through the abyss for the purpose of attaining the highest goal.... the childship to God. And for this purpose they have to live on earth in the flesh, they embody themselves as a human being and live their earthly life just as every once **fallen** original spirit. They, too, have to struggle and resist all temptations with which they are confronted by My adversary's side.... Thus, they must have passed in truth 'through the abyss' in order to then.... when they are recalled.... return as a child of God to Me, their eternal Father.... And beings of light have descended at all times in order to help people who, as once fallen beings, should achieve their return to Me.... The light beings' love is very strong and profound so that they are always helpful and only ever intend to return My lost children to Me. And I do not stop them if they want to descend to earth in order to bring help, which is always needed. But the beings had always come from Me, permeated by My light of love they were living creations of utmost perfection who, with the same will as Mine, work with Me in the spiritual kingdom as well as on earth when they descend for the purpose of a mission. No being of light will ever exclude itself from a mission of bringing light to the earthly inhabitants....

And thus the soul.... which as the human being Jesus accomplished the act of Salvation on earth.... was also such a spirit of light who had initially emerged from Me as a light ray of love to which I gave independent life.... This spirit had accepted a unique mission because he had realised from the start that the fallen beings needed Him, because he realised from the start that the first human being would

fail and that he, therefore, as the 'human being Jesus' wanted to help humanity.... He was indeed, from the start, also actively involved in the creation of the material world, for My will and strength flowed into all beings who had remained loyal to Me and who therefore were active as independent beings in infinity. This soul, too, had descended to earth (this soul, too, had **already previously** served Me as a spirit of light), and it established a connection between the people and God, that is, it came to people as a spirit of light and thus enabled Me Myself to audibly speak to people through this soul.... Hence this spirit of light served Me as a cover, nevertheless not physically, albeit certainly temporarily visible to people but not permanently, in as much as that He did not live on earth as a 'human being' but only worked amongst people apparently having the same physical substance, and yet he was and remained a spiritual being Which disappeared again from sight of those whom It helped through instructions and discourses.

Elevated beings of light indeed embodied themselves **physically** on earth too, and as representatives of Myself always also proclaimed My will to people, for it was necessary to provide them with the information about why and for what purpose they lived on earth in spiritual hardship. Nevertheless, a distinction has to be made between the earthly life of a being of light as a **human being** and the appearance of a spirit of light through whom I communicated Myself. In that case the spirit of light was not **My** visible external cover.... as was the case with the human being Jesus.... but he only served Me to proclaim My Word to people in a natural manner, for I could also have addressed people from above but then they would have lost their freedom of will.... Thus I always availed Myself of an external form which could either be a physical or a spiritual human being. However, the former lived his life on earth as a **human being**, whereas the latter was only temporarily visible to people because they urgently required My Word.

Consequently, if it is said that Jesus' soul had repeatedly incarnated before My human manifestation you should only ever assume a **spiritual** appearance when I Myself.... love.... wanted to express Myself to you humans and thus I chose a spiritual cover for Myself in order to manifest Myself to people. Whereas an embodiment of Jesus' soul in the flesh **before** My human manifestation did not take place, although I was also able to express Myself in the Word through a human being if he thus had descended to earth from the kingdom of light. Jesus' soul was chosen to enable My human manifestation on earth, and this soul was truly the most elevated spirit of light Who, as first-born Son, had emerged from Me.... that is, from My strength and the will of the one whom My greater than great love had externalised as first-created being. I Myself, as the Eternal Spirit God, manifested Myself **only in Jesus**, in this highest soul of light.... But it had already served Me as a spirit of light previously in order to enable Me to speak to people, who nevertheless had a high degree of maturity which enabled Me to send them such beings of light through which I Myself could address them directly.

But the fact that untold beings of light had also been embodied as human beings prior to this which likewise upheld people's contact to Me, which brought My Word to them, which, in a manner of speaking, lived on earth as a mouthpiece for Me, should be accepted as truth but should not lead to misguided notions, because **Jesus' soul** was chosen for My human manifestation, since it had offered itself from the start for this act of compassion in the awareness of the first human beings' failure....

It is wrong to say that I as 'God' have already incarnated several times.... For My human manifestation in Jesus is and remains a unique act, which humanity is unable and even the world of light is only barely able to grasp, the likes of which has never before and will never be evidenced again afterwards. For Jesus was not **one of many** but He was the One Who was to become for you humans and for all beings in the kingdom of light the visible God, Whom I have chosen for Myself as cover which shall remain eternally visible....

And this being had an exceptional status, for His love.... as the first spirit emanated by My and Lucifer's love.... was so immeasurably profound that only He could be considered for My human manifestation and thus a previous process as a human being on this earth was out of the question which, however, does not exclude that He, too, took part in creating the material world, for He knew

about My plan of return and He always unreservedly accepted My will and as a being with an abundance of light and strength was also able to accomplish it. This being was so devoted to Me that it enabled the complete fusion with Me, that He and I had to be one, because I in Him and He in Me absorbed each other completely, and this therefore will unveil the secret of My human manifestation in Jesus the moment the being has attained the degree of light again that gives him brightest realisation....

Amen

Evidence of Jesus' existence on earth....

B.D. No. 7250

January 8th 1959

Every human being has the opportunity to discover the secret of God's human manifestation, and every human being will then also have proof of Jesus' existence, Who will be revealed to him as God's Son and Redeemer of the world, which will render all other evidence superfluous. And anyone who has finally understood the human manifestation of God also knows that, and why, faith is required, why proof is not favourable but rather unfavourable for the soul's process of development, which is the reason for a person's life on earth.

The fact that God embodied Himself in Jesus Christ, in Jesus the man, is and remains beyond belief for people who have no spiritual connection at all, to whom spiritual aspiration is unfamiliar.... And thus 'spiritual aspiration' should be understood to mean the 'soul's process of development', which was not given earthly life as an end in itself but merely as a means to an end. Consequently, anyone not spiritually motivated is not 'awakened' either, i.e. his reasoning is more influenced by error than truth, he will rather accept misconceptions and regard them as truth, and the pure truth will seem unacceptable to him.... precisely because his spirit is still dark, which does not refer to his intellect but to the spiritual spark within a person, the divine part. This person will not accept purely spiritual causes and thus God's human manifestation as the 'result' of such a spiritual 'cause' will be beyond his understanding. But it happened, God Himself embodied Himself in a human being, and this human being was Jesus, the son of Mary, Who was begotten by the spirit of God. Nothing was allowed to happen which could force people to believe, even Jesus' birth was subject to human law, but not the conception.... People should not be so arrogant as to doubt this when they consider that all living beings as well as the whole work of creation emerged out of God's strength, thus it is indeed possible for this strength to create a human being out of His will.

But this birth without conception also had spiritual reasons which an awakened spirit can quite easily understand. However, the human being has to know that there were spiritual reasons for the entire work of creation which were based on the free will of the first created spiritual beings, and that this free will also plays a part in the existence of the human being.... the first created original spirit.... which is significant and at the same time also an explanation why no or only little evidence can be found for the existence of Jesus the man, since a human being may not be compelled by any means to take a positive or negative attitude towards Jesus Christ, the divine Saviour. His attitude towards Him must be the result of complete freedom of will because this alone determines the human being's spiritual rebirth into the first created being, which is the purpose for the human being's life on earth.

Whatever can be proven enforces a decision.... No person may be forced to make a decision if the previous perfection of the first created being should be achieved once again, which is the purpose and goal of the entire work of creation. Hence, first of all a person has to know about the origin and goal of everything in existence, about the meaning and purpose of creation and all created beings within it. Yet he will never be able to gain this knowledge from books, it has to be conveyed to him through the spirit of God, Who is eternal truth Himself. This, however, requires conditions which all people certainly could but only few want to meet.... Nevertheless, the spirit of God can only express itself where these conditions are met: a living faith in God which can only come alive through love, and a conscious request for God's truth in the very belief to receive the truth from Him.... And it will be

given to the person because the spirit of God now contacts the spiritual spark, which is a part of Him, in the human being and the person will be taught through the spirit....

Anyone who cannot or does not want to believe this will never attain wisdom, the light of knowledge.... But the most marvellous revelations will be unveiled to anyone who believes, he will see brightly and clearly that which is incomprehensible to other people, he will be able to understand the correlations, and the problem of God's human manifestation in Jesus will be resolved in such an amazing way so that he will not require any further proof and yet he will be able to perceive everything more clearly than even the keenest intellect could. But then the period of time between Jesus' life on earth and the present is irrelevant to an awakened spirit because Jesus' life was not an event intended for a certain group of people but it was intended for all people in the past, present and future.... All people will know of Jesus' life but they need no evidence of His existence if their spirit is awakened, yet without the awakening of spirit even the most distinct evidence would be useless for the attainment of the maturity of the soul, because faith on the basis of proof is no faith which respects free will, and only free will is taken into account. The intellect is of no or very little significance to the awakening of the spirit within the human being.... The latter is the result of a life of love, a life of unselfish love for other people, hence researching the most profound secrets is not the privilege of keen intellectual activity but solely the prerogative of those who keep God's commandments, which Jesus the man taught on earth 'Love God above all else and your neighbour as yourself....' The result of fulfilling these commandments is the most certain and obvious evidence of Jesus' existence because then God's spirit will lead the person to finding the truth and also explain to him all correlations which the human intellect alone would never be able to achieve....

Amen

God's human manifestation in Jesus

'God sent His Son to Earth....'

B.D. No. 8537

June 22nd 1963

Time and again it is explained to you that Jesus' soul came from the world of light to earth in order to embody itself in the man Jesus for the sake of a mission which required a **pure** soul, for God Himself wanted to take abode in this soul, and He was only able to do that in a pure soul without sin.... He sent His Son to earth.... Can there be a clearer word to confirm this? It was a **non-fallen** soul, as opposed to the human souls which have to take the long process of development through the creations and start their human embodiment in a very imperfect state.... But that does not rule out that Jesus' soul had to struggle and fight incredibly hard against everything unspiritual which besieged it from outside.... for His body was immature matter and, due to the adversary's influence, the soul was badly besieged by these unredeemed substances.... All earthly passions clung to the body and its instincts, which still adhered to the body as part of the very immature substances, demanded gratification. Jesus' soul came to earth in a completely pure state, yet untold immature beings clung to it which the soul was not permitted to shake off; instead, it needed to pacify and mature them. Jesus, the man, was also inundated by external immature substances, his environment so affected His soul that it had to endure the same inner battles a fallen soul has to endure, and therefore it is untrue that because of His perfect soul it had been easier for the man Jesus to accomplish this act of Salvation.... On the contrary.... because it was pure and without sin.... His soul suffered far more in the immature environment, His pure soul reacted exceedingly sensitively towards sin, towards everything that due to the adversary's influence inundated Him on part of his fellow human beings.... The darkness which the soul of light had to stay in caused it indescribable pain and yet, it was filled by burning love for this sinful human race and wanted to redeem it from sin and death. So although everything of a satanic nature crowded Jesus soul, it nevertheless did not succeed in making Jesus Himself fall into sin. He withstood all temptations, He fought against His adversary as well as against everything unspiritual pestering Him.... His love for His brothers in need did not diminish and He also succeeded in spiritualising his body's unspiritual substances through love, which constantly increased, and so filled the man Jesus that the Eternal Love Itself took possession of Him, Which would never have been able to manifest itself in a sinful soul without causing it to perish.... Why won't you humans accept these Words 'He sent His Son to earth....'? That which comes from Him is perfect and thus it is said 'He came down to earth' and not 'He ascended from the abyss....' Although Jesus' soul was surrounded by satanic elements to a great extent, they approached His soul from outside and His soul nevertheless resisted them and did not allow itself to fall as God's adversary had intended.... Regardless of whether He was pestered by His body's immature substances.... or whether unredeemed beings were trying to cling to Him as Satan's emissaries.... His pure soul resisted and fended off everything of a satanic nature, whereas it matured its body's immature spiritual substances so that it was able to join the soul in a spiritualised state when Jesus had accomplished His act of love. As soon the soul entered the realm of darkness it was subjected to satanic forces yet it did not succumb to them, it resisted them instead because it was full of love and this love provided it with the strength to persevere until the end.

However, the soul brought **love** along from above, it did not sacrifice love, instead, it united itself increasingly more with the Eternal Love and thus the unification took place, which should be every person's ultimate goal on earth. Jesus, the human being, deified Himself on earth through His great love and His extreme suffering and agonising death.... Yet He, too, had to struggle in order to attain this deification, it did not come any easier to Him than any other person, for people also possess the divine spark of love and can constantly nourish and fan it into a bright flame.... They can appeal to Jesus for help, whereas Jesus only ever drew strength from love.... but this love sheltering within Him

was God Himself. And then again, God was only able to shelter in a being without sin, He would never have been able to enter a fallen soul which had travelled the path of ascent through the creations.... a soul which had once fallen away from Him and rejected His love.... After all, this had been the original sin which burdened all fallen beings, and this original sin would have had to be redeemed first before a union with God was possible again.... Therefore, had the soul of the man Jesus been a 'fallen' soul, it would not have been redeemed prior to the crucifixion and God would never have been **able** to take abode in it.... However, He did shelter in Jesus for **He** was the **Love**.... God Himself had become human. God's human manifestation would never have been possible in any other way.... but this is and will remain the greatest mystery of all.... A pure being had to accomplish the act of atonement for humanity's original sin, for a fallen being was still subject to God's adversary's rule and would never have been able to muster the strength of detaching itself from the adversary, its prison guard.... Now it is possible for a person, because Jesus Christ died on the cross for it.... A soul of light had to take up the battle against the adversary and Jesus won this battle because His strength was love, because He waged this battle in unity with God Himself, the Eternal Love, and thus God Himself redeemed the human race from sin and death.... You humans need to be given the relevant information, for mistaken opinions will also lead to mistaken conclusions. Lucifer would not have had to fight against Jesus had he been in command of Him.... And every fallen soul is still subject to the adversary's control.... until it is redeemed by Jesus Christ.... No fallen soul would ever have succeeded in defeating the adversary.... The act of Salvation had not been accomplished as yet, therefore Jesus' battle would have been unsuccessful, for a fallen being which had once resisted God's strength of love had indeed received a tiny spark of love from God, but it would never have fanned it into a bright flame because the adversary would have stopped it and because the being itself was too weak.... You humans should understand that you lose yourselves in wrong thoughts if you don't let go of this opinion that Jesus' soul is Satan's share, thus once a fallen away spiritual being.... With this point of view you would only make the problem of God's human manifestation even more incomprehensible and questionable.... And therefore the pure truth must be repeatedly presented to you, for only the truth will enlighten you correctly and the truth will only ever come forth from God Himself....

Amen

And the Word was made flesh.... '

B.D. No. 8141

April 3rd 1962

And the Word was made flesh and lived among us....' I Myself, the eternal Word, came to earth and became flesh.... It was an act of overwhelming love and mercy that had moved Me to make contact with the human beings who had distanced themselves from Me to a point that they were no longer able to hear My voice, that they could no longer hear My Word within themselves, and who did not have a relationship with the Word of eternity any more.... They had caused this vast distance from Me themselves, and they would never have been able to bridge this distance on their own, they would never have been able to hear My Word again such as it was in the beginning when I could communicate with all My living creations through the Word.... For this reason My love has bridged the vast distance Itself.... I Myself came to earth and became flesh and then tried to get in touch with My living creations in order to speak to them again and to build a bridge for them which would lead them back to Me into the kingdom of light and bliss....

I Am the eternal Word Myself but I could not have spoken directly to any human being **from above** without placing those who once had originated from Me as **free** living creations into a state of compulsion. They had to cross the bridge to Me voluntarily and I could only achieve that by means of My Word which, however, should not sound extraordinary but like the spoken word between human beings. And for this reason I became flesh.... I took abode in the human cover of Jesus and spoke to people through Him.... But it was **My** Word which now was spoken to them, and through this Word I was able to show people the way. I was able to instruct them and tell them My will, I was able to reveal the Gospel to them, the divine teaching of love, which should once again change their souls to a state which would enable every person to hear My Word within himself if this was his sincere will....

But first humanity had to be released from sin and death. The former guilt of sin, caused by the apostasy from Me, first had to be redeemed, so that the subsequent bond with Me could be crowned by the 'pouring out of My spirit'.... so that the human being himself could hear My voice within himself again as it was in the beginning....

'And the Word was made flesh and lived amongst us....' Only few people understand the meaning of these words; the eternal Word came to earth Itself because humanity was in greatest difficulty, it was not aware of its wretched condition, of its lack of light, of the spiritual darkness in which it lived.... It was completely separate from Me and did nothing to reduce its vast distance from Me. The only way to help people was by means of instructions which corresponded to the truth.... They had to be informed of their God and Creator's will, and this will had to be conveyed to them by Myself.... I had to speak to them Myself and could only do so through a human being.... Thus I embodied Myself in this human being, and only in this manner was it possible to instruct people truthfully, to draw their attention to their wrong way of life, to inform them of My will and exemplify the kind of life they should lead themselves in order to escape their spiritual darkness, in order to walk the path I showed them first so that they could attain eternal life again. For they were influenced by My adversary who continuously provoked them into leading a life without love which subsequently made and kept them weak and they were not able to contribute anything towards their ascent.

I Myself provided them with the evidence that love results in strength. I healed the sick and carried out other miracles which only the strength of love could accomplish.... I also informed them about the consequences of a heartless way of life.... for I first had to explain to people **why** they were experiencing physical and spiritual hardship.... I had to inform them that their state as human beings could not be considered a happy one and what they therefore should do to attain beatitude.... And they had to hear all of this from the mouth of God.... They had to be able to hear **My Word**, and thus **the Word Itself** came down to earth and became flesh.... In the original state the Word sounded within every being and was the cause of inconceivable bliss.... And the beings abandoned this blissfulness themselves by voluntarily distancing themselves from Me and thus could not hear My Word any longer, because this Word was a direct emanation of love on My part which they then rejected.

Humanity's excessive hardship on earth prompted My love and mercy to draw nearer to them and to confront them in **Word** despite their resistance.... And anyone who had ignited just a tiny spark of love within himself recognised Me and accepted My Word.... He also recognised the Deity in Me and followed Me.... But by and large people just saw the human being in Me and therefore valued My Word simply as that of a human being.... I was amongst them and they did not recognise Me.... Nevertheless, I was able to proclaim the Gospel of love, to repeatedly impart the divine teaching of love to people and to educate My apostles Myself and then send them into the world with the task of proclaiming My Gospel and bearing witness to Me.... The 'Word Itself' had come to earth, and It was made flesh for the benefit of humanity.... And every time My Word is spoken, My infinite love and mercy bows down towards humanity and emits Its love into those human hearts who willingly accept My Word, who listen to it and recognise it as their Father's voice and who are grateful for this great gift of grace.... For I Myself Am the eternal Word, and anyone who listens to Me enters into closest contact with Me, and he will indeed achieve his last goal on this earth, he will find complete unification with Me, his God and Father, to Whom he has finally returned to be eternally blessed....

Amen

'I came into the world....'

B.D. No. 6719

December 20th 1956

All angels in Heaven praise and glorify Me for having descended to Earth in order to redeem the human race.... Not until the soul enters the spiritual kingdom will it recognise what act of love I accomplished for you, for as soon as it is enlightened it can witness everything and therefore also grasp the full significance of My descent, My act of Salvation, and in its love and feeling of gratitude it will only ever give thanks and sing its praises to the Saviour of humanity, Jesus Christ, Whom it

now recognises as its God and Father of eternity and, in ardent love, is devoted to Him forever. Only a loving heart can assess the depth of My love and mercy which made Me descend to earth into a world of hatred and unkindness.... But people suffered tremendous spiritual hardship for they were gagged by My adversary who had complete control over them, who had deprived them of all freedom and from whom they would have been unable to release themselves without help. I saw the futile struggle of people who still had a living faith in a God and Creator and to Whom they therefore called in their distress.... I had already informed them long before through seers and prophets of the Messiah's appearance and with anxious need they waited for this Messiah because they still believed in Me. And thus I sent the Saviour from above to them I sent My Son to earth in order to subsequently take abode in Him, in order to speak to them Myself, in order to reveal Myself to them and to mature their hearts so that they would learn to recognise Me and understand how I wanted to help them escape their adversity. For their thinking, too, was still far too worldly, they, too, only regarded Me as a Saviour from **earthly** adversity because they did not recognise their **spiritual** hardship but this alone motivated Me to descend to earth. And so I first had to prepare their souls through My teaching, I had to encourage and admonish them to live a life of love and exemplify such a life of love Myself, so that they thereby also gained more knowledge which then enabled them to understand and appreciate the greatest act of divine love.... Although My descent to earth certainly took place quite naturally it was nevertheless associated with miraculous side-effects which soon granted those, whose hearts were not entirely devoid of love, bright illumination as to **who** had come into the world in the infant Jesus. My boundless love and mercy had sought a path to win My lost living creations back again, and in Jesus, the human being, I walked this path Myself.... Although it was extremely sorrowful and bitter, it nevertheless brought deliverance to the enslaved human race, it brought them salvation from Satan's power, it brought those of you back to Me again who **wanted** to find redemption.... I Myself came to earth.... but I was unable to appear in My power and glory, which would have completely consumed you. For this reason I came inconspicuously into the world in an infant, Which was and remained a shell for Me until the act of Salvation had been accomplished, for I Myself took the path across the earth in the human being Jesus, I became human for love of you, My living creations, in order to help you return again to your God and Father of eternity....

Amen

God's human manifestation in Jesus....

B.D. No. 7731

October 27th 1960

The greatest mystery for you humans is and will remain My human manifestation in Jesus Christ.... Even if it is explained to you in a comprehensible way, it will nevertheless remain a secret for you, because My Being cannot be made completely understandable since you always want to personify a thinking being. Thus, you imagine a 'spiritually tangible' God as something 'limited' and also assign this to Jesus, the human being Who, in a manner of speaking, unites two beings within Himself. However, this concept is not right, for My Being is inscrutable, it is the all-pervading and all-encompassing strength which knows no limitation and yet is intelligent and endowed with a will.

It is impossible for you humans to imagine My Being because you are finite, because you have not yet attained the perfection which removes every limitation. Nevertheless, you, too, are carriers of this strength, you are merely permeated to a limited extent by the strength which, however, Jesus harboured in all fullness because He was perfect, thus He had, through a life of love, deified Himself on earth.... No limit for the influx of divine strength existed for Him, He was completely permeated by it.... thus My fundamental nature, the divine strength of love, was in Him, and so I Myself was able to be in Him, Whose shell had so shaped itself that it enabled a complete permeation of it without being consumed by My strength.

And thus it can be said that it was 'God' Who merely had made Himself visible in the shell of the man Jesus because, as the source of strength, I could not be visible to any being since no being would have survived had it been able to look into the enormous fiery sea of My love.... Consequently, I had

to create a limitation for Myself, I had to choose a form which could be visible to you humans and completely permeate this form.... However, the form nevertheless remained what I Myself Am for eternity.... the highest and most perfect Being.... The form served the highest and most perfect Being as an abode for the sake of My living creations which desired to behold Me. And yet, they will never ever be able to fathom My nature because it is and remains inscrutable for all created beings, for everything that once emerged from Me.

Wanting to personify the Eternal Deity is a misguided notion, for I Am not a limited Spirit, I Am all things.... I Am the strength Which permeates everything, Which pervades the whole of infinity, Which maintains all beings and creations and safeguards their continued existence.... And yet, I Am a Being Which acts in wisdom and love, Which uses Its will and can think in supreme perfection, thus love and wisdom always determine Its thoughts and omnipotence carries out everything.

The fact that the once created beings desired to behold Me was the cause of their apostasy.... But it was not possible for Me to be visible to these beings because they would have ceased to exist in view of the abundance of light and strength which would have had to be revealed to them.... Even so, I wanted to satisfy My children's desire, I wanted to visibly present Myself to them and I did so in Jesus Christ, in a human shell, which first had to spiritualise itself in order to absorb the abundance of My of light and strength.... The shell had to become the same spiritual substance which is My fundamental nature for eternity....so as not to perish when I Myself permeated the form....

Hence nothing human stayed behind, everything was spirit from Me and thus Jesus was God.... I had become a human being, but only in order to accomplish, as a human, the mission of redeeming your original sin. Nevertheless, nothing of Jesus the 'human being' stayed behind, through His life on this earth He had deified Himself, He had completely merged with Me, His Creator and Father of eternity.... My fundamental nature had manifested Itself in Him.... The eternal Spirit which permeates everything had assumed a visible shape in Jesus.... And thus I became visible to all My children who mature to a point that they can bear to see Me, that they may behold Me from face to face....

Amen

God and Jesus are one.... Human manifestation of God....

B.D. No. 8250

August 24th 1962

That the human spiritual state is growing increasingly darker is revealed by fact that people are no longer able to understand God's 'becoming One' with Jesus properly.... and that they therefore also lack the right comprehension for God's 'human manifestation'.... Owing to the misguided teaching of the three-person Deity they began to think wrongly. Yet, time and again, it has to be said that the eternal Deity cannot be personified.... thus It cannot be conceived as anything other than power permeating the whole of eternity.... This power cannot be limited nor can it be thought of as a 'form'.... but it can permeate a form completely.... And this process of complete permeation by divine strength occurred in the man Jesus....

He was full of love and love is the fundamental substance of the eternal Deity.... ceaselessly emanated into infinity, which creates and maintains everything.... And this divine strength of love permeated the human form of Jesus and thus manifested itself in Him. God's fundamental nature took abode in the man Jesus and thus God became 'human'.... and since Jesus was completely filled with the fundamental substance of God, He became 'God'.... Because even His completely spiritualised human form was able to wholly unify with God after His crucifixion so that Jesus then became the comprehensible Deity.... that the human being cannot imagine God other than in Jesus.... but that it cannot ever be a question of 'two people'.... The human being Jesus had achieved the goal on earth, the complete deification, which all created beings should achieve.... Because God wanted to create images of Himself whose final perfection, however, had to be achieved by the free will of the being itself. Jesus the man achieved this deification not only on account of a life of love, but with the act of Salvation He also redeemed humanity's guilt of sin.... for He used God's strength of love or He would have been unable to bear the terrible suffering and crucifixion. This strength of love was God's

fundamental nature, thus God Himself was within the man Jesus in all fullness and accomplished the act of Salvation....

However, it is a misleading concept when you humans speak of a three-person God because the eternal Deity cannot be personified since It is pure love, and this love manifested Itself in Jesus, and thus the eternal spirit God was working in Jesus, and to all beings He can only be comprehensible in Jesus.... Since God's former created beings had abandoned Him because they could not see Him, He became a visible God to them in Jesus.... But Jesus is not a second being that could be thought of as existing next to God.... He is God because God is strength of love, Which permeates a fully spiritualised form, thus it consists entirely of divine fundamental substance and is therefore only visible to those beings who have also become spiritualised in order to see spiritually.

It is certainly correct to describe God's nature as Father, Son and Holy Spirit if the Father is acknowledged as love, the Son as wisdom and the Holy Spirit as the will or power of God.... Because God's nature is love, wisdom and power.... But the goal God had set for Himself when He created the beings, the voluntary deification of these beings, also explains.... when it is achieved.... God's manifestation in Jesus.... the visible Deity in Jesus, while the three-person Deity does not allow for a correct, i.e. truthful explanation. People have created their own concepts which obstruct their spiritual maturing process, because only one God can be called upon; three different Gods may not be prayed to but God Himself wants to be acknowledged in Jesus, and hence He can only be worshipped in Jesus.... And He demands this acknowledgment of all human beings, because this acknowledgment had been denied to Him in the past, and because the act of Salvation has to be accepted at the same time.... Because no person can find forgiveness of his original sin without Jesus Christ, and therefore the human being has to declare his belief in Him.... he has to believe that God Himself has shown compassion for humanity and accomplished the act of Salvation in Jesus....

Amen

The birth of Jesus

Answer to questions about the Immaculate Conception and advantages of the souls of light....

B.D. No. 6673
October 20th 1956

I want to help you in all earthly and spiritual adversity so that you believe in My love, in My wisdom and might.... For I love you, My living creations, infinitely, and I also want to gain your love.... I know of your adversity and also how to end it, and I have the power to do so. I gladly demonstrate My love, wisdom and might to children who turn to their Father and trustingly appeal to Him for His consideration and help. I want to eliminate your earthly and spiritual adversity, yet occasionally I demand your patience in earthly hardship for only I know why it had to happen to you. But I will take it from you....

However, anyone experiencing spiritual adversity will not have to wait long, for as soon as he calls upon Me to consider him I Am will already be willing to help. Spiritual adversity consists of: psychological weakness, thus a diminished will, spiritual darkness and constantly recurring doubts.... spiritual adversity is My opponent's activity and influence, who very frequently especially dares to tackle people who are already My Own and whom he wants to get back under his control.... And as long as the human being lives on earth he will try to exert his influence, intending to weaken him time and again. Yet as soon as the person turns to Me he will displace My adversary, and I will let My strength flow and give the person light and perception, I will fulfil his request to avert his spiritual hardship....

You should know that it is My adversary's intention to extinguish the bright radiance of the light of truth which penetrates everywhere and disperses the region of **darkness** where only My adversary is able to work. Thus he will try to extinguish the light. He will want to cast shadows across it by raising doubtful questions in the person and thereby intending to obscure the light of awareness. But I will not allow the latter; instead, My light of truth from above will shine down even more brightly, and the light he tried to obscure will illuminate the night even more.... and wherever a shadow still exists it will be consumed by the all-permeating light from Me, for nothing dark can endure this light.... And thus the 'Eternal Light Itself' will proclaim to you:

You, who are living on earth.... as well as all spirits which once had lived an earthly life as a human being.... you are the 'once fallen spirits', with few exceptions; for beings of light also embody themselves on this earth. Thus beings from the kingdom of light descend to you humans in order to assist you in serious spiritual hardship. Therefore you must differentiate between spirits having **fallen away** from God and original spirits **remaining** with God.... the former exist in the abyss as followers of My adversary and the latter stay with Me in all perfection. Furthermore, you have to differentiate between beings which still harbour the **adversary's** will within themselves and those which have already entered into **My** will but are not yet perfected and therefore still subject to his influence. And then you will be able to understand that the latter need to be helped because they are too weak to resist his influence. Thus the mission of these beings of light, which also voluntarily embody themselves on earth in order to help them, will be explicable to you too. And then you will also comprehend the mission of the human being Jesus.... Who, as such a being of light, wanted to accomplish a rescue mission which defeated My adversary's power....

All were children of My love.... the fallen beings as well as those remaining with Me, but the beings did not stay the same, they had become different now.... they were radiant and dark beings which could not stay in the same spheres together. And thus the 'kingdom of light' and the 'kingdom of darkness' became the abode for these different-natured beings. And no bridge existed between these two realms until the arrival of Jesus, one of My remaining angel spirits, Who wanted and succeeded in

bridging this distance through a unique act of compassion. The beings which once had lost their perfection due to their rebellion against Me required someone to help them, since they were too weak by themselves even though the connection had been established, for My adversary also had great power which he was able to use against his former followers. But the beings which had stayed with Me were strong too, since they constantly let themselves be permeated by the strength of My love.... Thus the strength of a **non-fallen angel spirit** would have fully sufficed in order to achieve victory over My adversary and to save his followers from him.... Yet this contradicted My law of eternal order, given that the free will of all beings which once had followed My adversary would have been ignored, and such an attained victory would have prevented the beings from **becoming perfect**.

Consequently, another way had to be found.... 'Love' had to make a sacrifice, and it had to be every fallen being's decision to avail itself of this sacrifice, thus to wish that it was also made for itself.... But only a **human being** can offer a sacrifice; a being of light can indeed have the will to sacrifice itself, but in that case it has to render it as a human being, for a being of light is unable to suffer and also has so much strength at its disposal that it is able to do anything.

A human being, however, is a weak, imperfect being and sensitive to suffering and torment, which needs to muster a vast amount of willpower when it voluntarily accepts sufferings and torments in order to achieve something, not for itself but for its fellow human beings, and which wants to bestow its love on the wretched human race.... It had to make the sacrifice as 'a mere human' for its fellow human beings.... It had to be **capable** of suffering and dying....

And thus you will understand that the human being called Jesus was not allowed to demonstrate any advantages which would characterise Him as an extraordinary person, even though His soul was a spirit of light.... Although it had not passed through creation like the human beings' souls, the fallen brothers; nevertheless, this soul, when it entered the body of flesh.... which, like other people's bodies, was a cluster of immature spiritual substances, thus also subject to the same feelings, longings and passions.... had to learn to overcome these as Jesus the human being during His earthly life. For His mission, apart from the salvation.... the redemption of the gravest guilt of sin.... was to exemplify to people the only way of life which would guarantee them a return to Me. Thus, if people who were completely inadequate, weak and captivated by passions were asked to do something it should be possible for them to accomplish this request.... And if the man Jesus wanted to serve as an example He had to be just like His fellow human beings.

His extraordinary origin, like that of the embodied beings of light on earth which want to be of help to people, by no means infers unusual abilities or advantages which would have required a **less stringent** fight with himself in order to thus find unification with Me on earth, which is the goal and task of **every** human being on earth and for which the man Jesus set the example that it **can** be achieved. All the advantages Jesus had as a spirit of light He surrendered before His incarnation as a human being, or His work could not have been what it is: a sacrifice made by **love**, the blessing of which should benefit all people.... But neither can it ever be denied that '**God Himself**' made this sacrifice because **love** was the determining factor which so infused the human being Jesus that I thus was able to be in Him after He, as a human being, had voluntarily shaped himself such that I could take abode in Him, that He became a vessel for Me and thus He then possessed strength and light in abundance.... which again is a process that could **not just** take place in Jesus the human being but which **all** people should and are able to achieve because they now have help through the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ.... since due to his act of Salvation as a human being he gained an amount of grace which is now available to every person.... And anyone who avails himself of it will also reach the goal. He will likewise find unification with Me on earth, he will be able to receive light and strength without limitation....

However, you shall continue to receive clarification, because as long as questions arise in you it is also necessary to provide you with the correct answer. And the more sincerely you desire this answer the sooner you will receive it.

The souls evolving from the abyss can expect, as the last stage of their development on earth, to be embodied as a human being, then the process of development will be completed and the soul will enter the spiritual realm, irrespective of how it is shaped when it discards its physical shell. Hence these souls proceed in accordance with divine order, they release themselves from hard matter by way of service and yet rise gradually.... Souls of light embodied on earth, however, only descend to earth for the purpose of a mission, they take abode in the human body straight away but then they indeed travel their earthly path like every other person and are thus also subject to natural law and equally have to struggle on earth.... Their external shell will make the same demands on them, because it is composed from still completely immature spiritual substances, from tiny particles of the soul of a once fallen original spirit which is still in utter opposition to God and which first has to be pacified and changed by the soul, which is always a struggle. The soul is not conscious of its earlier state of light, the earthly body has caused its own darkening, only love will arise sooner and more intense in such a person and disperse the darkness more rapidly too....

A soul from above will also always turn its eyes upwards towards God, Whom it very quickly learns to recognise. Such a soul will usually not need a long time to unite itself with the divine spark within, which can easily influence it and then spirit and soul will try and succeed to influence their external shell too. Still, the fact that the soul is travelling the path across earth is always associated with the self-evidence that the soul has to fight, because it constantly has to overcome obstacles in this earthly-material world in order to reach the spiritual goal.

Thus no soul is able to ascend without pain, not even a soul of light, since at the beginning of its incarnation it had descended into the abyss, into a state of ignorance, of constraint and weakness.... This should therefore always be taken into consideration when the earthly life of an embodied being of light is assumed to be an easy one. The earthly body is and remains a shackle for the soul until it leaves it. And yet even the body can still vary. The flesh can still be steeped in sin, thus still incorporating much of Lucifer within itself if it is born out of sin, if the people creating a new life are only controlled by satanic attributes. And then again, a being, newly awakened into life, may owe its life to two people's urge to **love**, predominantly good instincts could therefore also have entered this being, and thus the external shell will be appropriately natured.... It will carry much of the 'genetic makeup' within itself and more or less has to fight hard in earthly life and therefore also arrive at its goal with more or less difficulty.... Yet no human being's earthly existence remains without struggle.... A light being's earthly life is in fact frequently exceptionally difficult, because the soul unconsciously experiences its stay in the earthly world as a torment and, for the sake of its mission, often also accepts a very arduous earthly fate.

The process of procreation is now, due to Adam's failure, unblessed, for it did **not** correspond to God's will, Who wanted to give the first human couple His blessings at the right time.... Lucifer participated in the procreation of the people, and he will never relinquish this right (granted to him through Adam's will) either.... He will always participate in the emergence of new life, even if people's degree of love can keep him at bay to a point and God's protection against him is requested.... And now you will understand that **God Himself**, however, opposes His adversary, when He creates a bodily shell for Himself which He wants to take possession of Himself one day and which should already serve Him as an abode at the time of birth. For God Himself will never ever unite with His adversary in His activity.... And likewise He will not allow the natural carrier of His shell to be taken over by His **adversary**.... For He, the God and Creator of eternity, Who brought **everything** into being, Who assigned purpose and destiny to everything, truly has the power to externalise from Himself everything He wants.... thus it will surely also be possible for Him to bring forth a human being without the lawful act of procreation; and it will also truly be possible for Him to keep His adversary at bay until His will is done....

For God only takes shelter inside a **pure** cover, He will not unite with something impure.... which, however, does not exclude that the human being in this kingdom of imperfection, in the kingdom belonging to His adversary, is nevertheless subject to all harassments and that his earthly progress is therefore no less anguished and full of conflict like that of his fellow human beings. For without fight

there could be no victory.... God's adversary, however, had to be defeated, and Jesus truly won the most arduous battle which ever was fought on earth.... and He won it as a **human being**, not as **God**....

Amen

Jesus came as Saviour....

B.D. No. 6951

October 21st 1957

I descended to earth because of the great spiritual need, because I had pity on the people who were held in captivity by My adversary, who could no longer resist him and who cried to God for a Saviour. But only few still believed firmly and steadfastly that the Messiah would come as it was written, but these few expected Him with great longing, they expected Him as their Saviour from severe difficulties and distress.... And I descended for their sake, because their cry for help reached My ears and I did not want to disappoint their faith. Besides, the time had come for the mission of the man Jesus.... I wanted to release the whole of humanity from the adversary's ties, and I also wanted to bring redemption to those who had already passed away but could not enter My kingdom until the immense guilt of sin had been redeemed, which was the cause of humanity's existence on earth.... I Myself came to earth in this human being Jesus to bring salvation to all people, to rescue them from the chains with which they had been bound since eternity and to open the path into My kingdom for them, into the kingdom of eternal peace and bliss.

Only few people were willing to receive Me when I descended to earth, that is, only few recognised Me, because they were living a life of love.... And hence the flock of My followers was small, even though I constantly endeavoured to motivate people to do works of love which would have resulted in their recognition of Me as their God and Father of eternity. Because the immense hardship was caused by the fact that there was little love amongst people, that they were already completely controlled by the one who, being entirely without love, confronted Me as My enemy, whom I wanted to fight and, through My victory, rescue the souls which he held captive. Thus I Myself exemplified a life of unselfish love to people, because love was the weapon which I Myself wanted to use against My opponent and which also gave the people themselves the strength to resist him. Without love they were his slaves, but he cannot resist love, love is the only weapon to which he succumbs, but at the time of My descent to earth it could barely be found amongst people.... Love was the only bond with Me, their God and Father of eternity. And this bond had to be established if people wanted to hear My Word.

My Word could no longer be spoken to them, because without love they no longer believed in a God Who wanted to speak to them. And so I came to earth to speak to people Myself, to reveal to them My will once again, to give them My commandments of love once again, and to once again proclaim My Gospel.... the divine teaching, which was to guide them into bliss. But I had to bring yet more significant help to people.... First I wanted to save them from the power which kept them enchained, which depleted their will and prevented them from fulfilling My will. I wanted to release them from his control.... And to this end I chose the form of the human being Jesus in order to accomplish an act of love and mercy which would deliver humanity from all hardship.... But all the people who wanted to be released from their tormentor also had to side with Me. Those who voluntarily stayed with him could not be saved by Me, but those who turned to Me also received the strength from Me to release themselves from his clutches.

However, this act of Salvation had to be accomplished by human means, because people's will must not be compelled. They should be entirely free to acknowledge or reject the act of Salvation by the human being Jesus.... in Whom I Myself was made flesh. For this reason I walked on earth as the man Jesus and prepared people for the immense sacrifice of compensation, which was to make

Amends for the enormous guilt of sin, on account of which they lived on earth. But only few recognised Me and saw Me as the Saviour, the Messiah, Who always and forever had been proclaimed by seers and prophets. The hardship was overwhelming when I descended to earth but the act of Salvation was accomplished, because My love was overwhelming too, and thus Love wiped out the

guilt of sin by sacrificing Itself on the cross. And this love will time and again try to help people who have not yet found salvation, who have not yet made use of the blessings of the act of Salvation and thus still languish in My adversary's captivity, who would never be able to release themselves without help and whom I will nevertheless never abandon. Instead I will cross their path time and again and draw their attention to the act of Salvation by the human Jesus, Whose love as a 'human being' recognised his fellow human beings' spiritual hardship and Who, by virtue of His love, made the sacrifice to die on the cross in extreme agony. And time and again I will come to people in My Word and inform them of Jesus' act of supreme love and mercy, Who received Me Myself, Who totally united with Me by means of love, and Who became the Saviour and Redeemer from sin and death for all of you....

Amen

The birth of Christ.... I.

B.D. No. 7237

December 24th 1958

Salvation has come from above.... How many lips utter this and how often is the heart unaffected, insofar as that the human being not even once seriously reflects on the meaning of Jesus Christ's coming down to earth. A child was born, Whose soul descended from the kingdom of light because God wanted to embody Himself in this infant. The infant Jesus was a human being, born to Mary, the virgin, who conceived him through the strength of the spirit.... The human being Jesus started His earthly course of life like everyone else, yet the side effects of His birth were not those of an ordinary person but they indicated that an exceptional cover also sheltered an exceptional boy child.... that it should be the cover for the Eternal Deity Which was only able to manifest Itself in a pure and sinless human being, as was the boy child Jesus. For He had to carry out a mission of such immense significance that the requirements for it also had to be exceptional. **God Himself** wanted to take abode in the infant Jesus and chose for Himself an immaculate form which also harboured an immaculate soul, in which the Eternal Deity was able to dwell in order to accomplish the act of Salvation for the whole of the human race. The fact that God Himself descended to earth was an act of overwhelming compassion, for Earth was covered in profound darkness and all its inhabitants too, they were controlled and gagged by the prince of darkness and languished under the pressure of slavery in sin and agony. And God knew the hardship of His living creations which once had voluntarily separated themselves from Him and, entangling themselves in ever deeper darkness, no longer found a way out and cried for a Saviour to liberate them. God heard their cry and sent His Son to earth.... a Being Which likewise emerged from His might and love and Which remained in His abundance of light when His brothers plunged themselves into the darkness. Jesus' soul was devoted to God with boundless love but it also loved its fallen brothers and wanted to help them return into the Father's house because it knew that happiness and bliss are only possible in God's presence and that the distance from Him meant hardship, agony and darkness.

Jesus knew both conditions and His love for the wretched being motivated Him to offer Himself as a sacrifice in order to remove the guilt of sin which was immense, and the beings which became sinful would never have been able to make

Amends for it themselves. Yet a pure and blameless soul wanted to sacrifice itself for their sins in order to redeem the guilt and to satisfy God's righteousness. For the soul was **love**.... And this **love** was **God**.... God or love permeated the man Jesus, so that He wanted to accomplish an act of greatest suffering and agony for the sake of these fallen brothers. And thus God Himself descended to earth in Jesus and entered a human form which corresponded to all preconditions in order to shelter the Eternal Deity Himself without fading away.... The infant Jesus was full of love and all hearts entering His ray of love became permeated by love, singing praise and giving thanks, for only people came to the infant's manger whose hearts were pure and devoted to God and who therefore felt the love emanated by the infant and who came aglow with burning love for the Jesus child. Although the events surrounding Jesus' birth are now only regarded a myth, anyone who is filled by the spirit of God,

whose spirit is awakened, knows that everything which has been preserved as knowledge about the birth of Jesus is the truth. Miracles upon miracles happened around the child Himself, in nature, in Heaven and on Earth, and all the angles bowed down on bended knees before the One Who had embodied Himself in the infant Jesus, just as men and animals were seized by holiest awe and silence when the greatest wonder, God's human manifestation in Jesus, was taking place. And the heart of anyone with an awakened spirit will also convincingly speak the Words 'Salvation has come from above....' For the light of love of the Saviour Jesus Christ likewise shines on him, he belongs to those for whom the Saviour came to earth to save them, he belongs to the redeemed, for whom the act of compassion on the cross was accomplished, because he wanted to become redeemed from sin and death. And he will not just pay lip service to the birth of Christ, with his heart he will think of everything that happened during that night when the light of the world came down to earth, when the infant Jesus came into the world. And he will join in singing the hymn of praise 'Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace to men of good will....'

Amen

The light descended to Earth....

B.D. No. 7780

December 24th 1960

The world was held in bondage.... You should understand that no-one who stayed on earth, no-one who lived in Lucifer's world which sheltered the fallen beings, was able to release himself from Satan's bondage.... He kept everyone shackled and would never ever have released them either, for he was devoid of all love, he was purely motivated by hatred and opposition to Me, Who is eternal Love Itself and from Whom he, too, had originated.... The world was held in bondage.... and therefore I Myself descended to earth in order to sever these fetters, to break the chains, to help the fallen beings ascend again.... in order to deliver people from his power. My descent to earth was an act of greatest compassion, for this wretched state was people's own fault, since they once followed him voluntarily. They existed in darkness and not even the smallest light would have been accepted by these fallen beings had I not taken pity on them and ignited a light in them.... in order to show them the path which leads to Me, back to their Father, Whom they had once voluntarily left. This is why the Light Itself came into the world.... The Eternal Light embodied Itself in an infant in order to take the path as a human being on this earth, and the infant Jesus became My outer shell.... I availed Myself of the human form in order to accomplish the act of Salvation, in order to defeat My adversary in an open battle and to wrest **those** souls from him who had the will and the desire to return to Me.... I paid the purchase price for these souls, I sacrificed My life on the cross, I bought them from My adversary with My blood.... Thus I started the earthly path as a human being with the birth of the boy child Jesus, which already started in an unusual way because this human being called Jesus had to fulfil an unusual mission: to serve Me Myself as a shell, because the sinful human race would have been unable to endure Me in My abundance of light and thus the 'Light of Eternity' had to enshroud itself. Nevertheless, exceptional light shone from the infant Jesus already, yet only visible to those whose loving way of life enabled them to endure the light and who therefore were permitted to come close to Me, for I knew who possessed this inner maturity and drew the few people to Me, who thus paid homage to Me as an infant like their king, for their clear souls recognised Me and prayed to Me.

My birth took place in seclusion for the abundance of spirit which permeated the infant Jesus at His birth caused the most miraculous happenings, and thus a few people were able to recognise that the announcements of many prophets were coming true, who had predicted the Messiah Who was to bring salvation to people in dire need. Those who still believed in a God and whose hearts were willing to love expectantly yearned for their Messiah and their hopes were fulfilled when I was born.... But they were unaware of the fact that I Myself had descended to earth, they were unaware that their God and Creator laid in the manger before them.... although they were seized by sacred awe and felt drawn to the infant in the manger with their whole being. For My love shone forth to them from this infant and touched their hearts.... And this was the start of My mission of giving love and of thereby awakening people's love in return. I took the life as a human being upon Myself, I conformed to all laws of

nature, I consciously travelled an earthly path whose goal had been the suffering and dying on the cross. And although the spirit within Me occasionally broke through and expressed itself I was nevertheless no more advantaged than other people, for I had to overcome the pestering of everything which was unspiritual in exactly the same way as is your task, for I wanted to **exemplify** for you a life as it complied with the Father's will, Who was within Me.... I, too, had to shape and spiritualise My corporeal body such that the Eternal Love was able to take abode in it. And My way of life constantly offered Me the opportunity for that; after all, I lived My life as a 'human being' because all of you humans were meant to follow My example by preparing your human body as a vessel for the divine spirit.... just as I had to do and did during My early years and during the years before My actual teaching activity.... And the Father took abode in the man Jesus, Who shaped Himself such that He served Me as a dwelling place, so that I, therefore, as Jesus the man, was 'full of the Holy Spirit', so that I taught and performed miracles because the Father Himself was within Me.... Every person can achieve this if he only is of good will to serve the divine spirit as a vessel into which it can flow, and then every person will also be able to release himself from the adversary's bondage, for as soon as he has entered into unity with Me in Jesus Christ, I Myself will loosen the chains and set him free.... For I lived on earth in order to redeem humanity.... I brought people the light so that they will find and indeed be able to cover the path which leads back to Me, back into the Father's house....

Amen

Jesus' childhood and adolescence

‘Did you not know, that I must be in My Father’s house....’

B.D. No. 3634

December 23rd 1945

Listen to the voice of the spirit: Every person shall shape himself such that the Father can take abode in him, thus, he himself shall become God’s house in which the Father can be effective. You all carry the divine spiritual spark within you which is therefore My share, hence I lay dormant in you waiting to be awakened through your loving activity and heartfelt bond with Me.... However, as long as you remain inactive you will not feel My presence, even though the spiritual spark rests in you. It can only become effective if you shape yourselves into a receiving vessel for Me Myself, only then will I be active in My house, then I will be able to dwell in you and instruct you according to absolute truth. Then I will be in My Father’s house.... then wisdom will be where love exists.... Then you will have become a house of God yourselves, which shelters the Holiest of all, which God Himself takes as a dwelling place.... I will be with you and never again will you walk alone on earth, but you will always and forever feel My presence and be permeated by My spirit, which will guide you into all truth, which will teach you just as I have taught in My Father’s house.... For when I became wisdom through love I had to be constantly active on earth.... Dispensing love and wisdom, I had to give to other people what I Myself had received because I wanted to help them attain beatitude. And thus I had to be in that which belongs to My Father, where I was able to proclaim His Word, where people gathered in order to hear His Word.... Consequently, God’s house will always be where His Word is taught.... where it is either externally offered to people or is inwardly perceived.... wherever the Father can be effective, that is, where love makes people receptive for the wisdom from Me.... For I always want to be active in My house, and My house consists of the hearts of people who want to accept Me and thus shape themselves into love so that I Myself, the eternal Love, can unite with them. My house is wherever My spirit can manifest itself.... but without the working of My spirit you will linger in empty halls even if you have chosen a place where you assume you will be able to find Me.... I can only be where My Father is, and the profundity of My Word can only be heard where love exists.... However, I Myself Am the Word and if you want to hear Me you must shape your hearts to become receptive, you must change yourselves into love and then open the doors for Me so that I can enter into your heart and make your **heart** My dwelling place wherever you may be....

Amen

Miracle-work of the child Jesus....

B.D. No. 5551

December 9th 1952

I want to teach you what you want to have clarified, for I want you to have the correct information first before you instruct your fellow human beings, which is the task of those of you who want to serve Me. I want you to understand everything yourselves before you pass your knowledge on, for the other person is frequently not very patient, he desires an explanation, especially when he has doubts, and then you should also be able to provide it informatively. The problem of God's human manifestation in Jesus gives rise to most questions, because so far it has been explained such that it causes increasingly more confusion instead of illumination. My earthly existence as a human being did not differ in any way from that of other people, I just gave room to the development of love in My heart where others increased their selfish love and instead of 'giving' they 'desired'.

The spark of love smoulders in every human being's heart, but it can ignite into a bright flame just as it can be smothered. This, however, also differentiates people from each other, for love leaves its mark of divinity on everyone, whereas selfish love is My adversary's image who exalted himself and thus

fell. **Love** is therefore the Divine in the human being, which appears only as a very tiny spark at the start of earthly life but has the capacity to expand infinitely. The spark of love was already recognisable in the infant Jesus because a soul of light had embodied itself in the child, which indeed had left all of God's glories behind in the spiritual kingdom yet not its love, and this strength of love expressed itself at times when the spiritual spark made contact with the eternal Father-Spirit, which happens with every loving child, but in Jesus it was intended to be obvious to people so that they would believe in the Divinity of the child Jesus. The working of the spirit is not prevented in an infant like that, it just rarely, if ever, surfaces because the human being's intellect and free will first have to strive for the working of My spirit themselves, which only consciously happens when he is old enough to make use of the intellect and will in freedom of thought.

The explanation for the miracles of the child Jesus, for the unusual events, can only be found in the high degree of love, for Jesus' soul came from above, it was a soul of light and love which was then wrapped in a human form and also prevented from its hitherto unrestricted work and activity in order to do justice to its human external form. The infant Jesus possessed a high degree of love.... yet the earthly-human nature asserted itself too.... the world, that is, My and His adversary also exercised his influence on this earthly-human nature since he was allowed to do so for the sake of the test of will. And then My spirit remained silent, for even the human being Jesus had to take this test of will, and the work of His soul's deification had to take place under the same conditions as with every other human being, albeit due to His love My spirit was and remained in Him.

Yet the **highest degree** of love had to be attained by the human being Jesus' own will.... and therefore My spirit withdrew during these years, it did not insist and impel Him, it allowed the human being Jesus complete freedom until, as a result of His intensified love, the ever increasing abundance of My spirit manifested itself as wisdom and might.... as outstanding knowledge and miracle-working. The human being Jesus had been chosen for this mission since eternity. A supreme being of light descended to earth; one of My children, living in magnificence, started His earthly progress, and thus this soul already had to permeate the earthly form of the infant Jesus, and everything remarkable in His youth was entirely natural and understandable, yet for people living in darkness equally incomprehensible, and so a cover was spread across the radiant light in later years and the actual mission began.... the deification of an earthly human being by means of love. I was indeed at all times able to work through My spirit in the human being Jesus, for all conditions to do so were given; yet for the sake of Jesus' mission everything divinely-spiritual withdrew, and this mission was accomplished by Him as a human being, Who took His strength entirely from His active love, which was just as difficult for Him to develop as for every other human being, because My adversary truly did not let his influence go to waste since, after all, Jesus' victory meant the adversary's defeat. But My adversary was unable to affect Jesus' free will, and this was wholly and completely aimed in My direction. And therefore He succeeded in accomplishing the work, for His will arose from His love for Me.... Love, however, is the strength which is stronger than death and therefore He also defeated the one who had brought death into the world.... Love was victorious and will remain so eternally....

Amen

Jesus' life before His teaching ministry....

B.D. No. 8486

May 3rd 1963

I will always educate you in all truthfulness, as soon as you desire it.... And I will also always answer the questions that arise in you, because you only desire the answer for the sake of truth.... that is, you would like clarity where various opinions prevail.... If I give you the instruction to spread the truth, you shall also always receive an explanation, no matter what it is: The earthly path of Jesus, the man, can no longer be verified, only by spiritual means can you humans be informed as to how and where Jesus spent the years which preceded His actual work as a teacher.... Even so, it is certain that he lived a very simple life with His family and that He always remained reticent even within the circle of people who frequented His parent's house.

He kept away from all festivities, as well as larger gatherings; He always kept Himself to Himself and inwardly matured as a result of His exceptionally helpful attitude towards His needy fellow human beings.... For His heart was full of love and this love increased His wisdom, knowledge revealed itself to Him so that He clearly recognised everything.... even though in the beginning this inner light came to Him in a flash only to withdraw again for a while, and then He spoke and thought like everyone else again, yet in His knowledge He was far more advanced than His contemporaries. However, He refused to accept instructions from people....

You humans may well believe that love is the best teacher and that someone.... who correctly develops his love will gain inner knowledge which can never be offered to him so comprehensively by another person.... You should know that Jesus' soul had come from the kingdom of light, that it had indeed forfeited the light during its life on earth but not the love within itself because, as a purest being of light it was illuminated by My eternal Fatherly love.... As a human being the light of love could not shine in abundance, because His fellowmen would have been unable to endure it, yet in Jesus the man it glowed on and revealed to Him all knowledge, on account of which He soon recognised humanity's immense hardship and His mission and consciously prepared Himself for this....

But you also know that He already preached in the temple as a boy.... that He gave answers to the scribes which took them aback.... Thus it testifies to the fact that He already possessed knowledge as a boy which He was not taught by people but which was caused by the bright flame within Him.... His love grew ever stronger and thus His wisdom increased.... and the Pharisees and scribes already treated Him with hostility because He wouldn't allow Himself to be taught by them, instead He stayed away from every school....

No records survived for future generations about the time between His sermon in the Temple and the beginning of His actual ministry, and therefore many different assumptions and descriptions are being advocated, as worked out by human intellect.... The reason why no records exist is because Jesus' life proceeded quietly in His parental house, because He seemed to have lost all divine abilities during this time, He stepped out of public view and led a very secluded life and, as a carpenter's son, also worked in His profession as such.... Nothing extraordinary happened to Him, for during these years Jesus had to mature as a 'human being' because He wanted to exemplify to people the way of life which leads to full maturity, to perfection....

Throughout this time His life was quiet, He did not possess any remarkable abilities, in fact, He gave the impression of a simple-minded person, because He withdrew from all people and only ever gave short answers and even the usual worldly knowledge seemed unfamiliar to Him.... Most of all He avoided contact with those who belonged to the Temple and whose task it should have been to provide spiritual guidance to people.... And so, soon there was no-one in His environment.... not even His close relatives.... who were still convinced that the once so extraordinary child had a divine mission....

This time of Jesus' life on earth had been especially grievous, for what was no longer externally visible was nevertheless deeply hidden within, it is just that Jesus had to deal with it Himself, He had to come to terms with everything as a human being, He had to fight as a man against all inner cravings and passions which besieged His body just like all other people.... He had to suffer and fight and mature through being of service.... For by virtue of His love, which emanates wisdom, He soon realised all correlations and He knew that He Himself first needed to attain the degree of maturity which would enable Him to accomplish His mission....

And He covered this process of development in silence and solitude as a plain carpenter's son.... Who did not leave His hometown, Who often merely looked for solitude for the purpose of attaining inner maturity by withdrawing into remote regions, by climbing hills and frequently staying alone for days, only in contact with His God and Father and remaining in prayer for strength and fortitude for that which was ahead of Him, which He often saw before His eyes in great detail and which plunged Him into dreadful states of fear. During these times He turned to Me in search of help.... And I was with My Son, I gave Him strength and granted Him increasingly brighter realisation, so that He time

and again offered Himself to complete the work which was intended to bring humanity salvation from sins and death....

However, the notion that the man Jesus acquired more profound knowledge through association with philosophers and teachers in foreign countries is completely misguided.... Who else could possibly have taught Jesus better than I Myself.... But I Myself dwelled in Jesus, the human being, as a result of His boundless love.... It is an absolutely absurd idea that Jesus would have needed instructions from another person.... in order to then be able to undertake His teaching ministry on earth in His country of origin.... If you humans have proof that I Myself convey the truth to earth providing specific preconditions exist.... how much sooner was Jesus therefore able to be taught by Me directly, after all, His love and total devotion to Me surpassed all of you.... Only someone who has no idea as yet about the consequences of a life of love, can make such allegations that Jesus had acquired the knowledge in other countries in order to appear as a teacher, that He had to visit other people in order to study their doctrines....

That which I evidently allow to happen to a simple earthly child: that I convey to it through the spirit the pure truth from above, you humans must truly grant the man Jesus as well, Who descended to earth in order to let Me Myself speak through Him to you, Who really did not need any teachers, instead, He accepted the most profound wisdom from Me directly and through these instructions became suitable to teach and to impart the pure truth to His fellow human beings.... And now you can also accept these very Words of Mine as purest truth, after all, it is My will that you should not live in error and that you shall receive an explanation where you yourselves are still lacking knowledge.

Most of all, it concerns the fact that you humans gain a clear impression as to Who Jesus essentially was and why He came into the world and grew up in the humblest and poorest circumstances.... For although He was as human as anyone else, He nevertheless proved to people that every person can develop the highest spiritual abilities in himself and that the knowledge He possessed and imparted to people came from within Himself.... but that He never had the need to be educated by others or to take notice of doctrines, since everything was, after all, known to Him, otherwise He would not have attained the highest perfection on earth which resulted in complete unity with Me, so that He became as One with Me.... in Whom I Myself became a human being in order to redeem you....

Amen

Jesus' battle against temptations

Jesus' battle against temptations....

B.D. No. 7056

March 5th 1958

My earthly life, too, was subjected to the same temptations and battles which you have to overcome.... I, too, had to struggle in order to bring all substances of the earthly body into the right order. I, too, knew and had to fight against cravings, for I was afflicted by the same weaknesses which cause you problems and only My inherent willpower mastered them. Hence I used force on My body, I did not allow it to gain control over My soul but prevailed over it and was able to do so by virtue of the love which flared up in Me as I lived among the enslaved human race.... I saw the adversity around Me which aggrieved people both in an earthly way as well as spiritually. And the burning desire to help them arose in Me.... For that reason I paid no attention to the body's desire in Me, I did not oblige it, for I knew, had I paid attention and satisfied My physical cravings, I would only have weakened in My willingness to help.

However, it was a difficult battle, for temptations besieged Me from all sides and the human nature in Me sought fulfilment.... But My soul turned to God, the stronger the temptations became the more it looked for the connection with the Father, and therefore it also received increasingly more strength, because this bond never remained ineffective. My life on earth was truly not an easy one until the complete unification with the Father-Spirit had taken place.... For I was as human as you and first had to do that which is also **your** task: to develop love to utmost perfection in order to thereby be able to give access in Me to the fullness of God.... the Eternal Love.... thus to find the ultimate union with Him, which is your goal on earth too. And even though My soul had come from the kingdom of light, it was nevertheless exceedingly besieged by its body of flesh, whose matter was the same as your body and thus also consisted of spiritually-immature substances which were still under the adversary's control, which he constantly impelled into all kinds of cravings and passions. The fact that I did not succumb to them as a human being was only achieved by the love in Me which strengthened My will to resist. And staying in dark and sinful surroundings also gave the external evil spirits an opportunity to besiege the body and to entice it with make-belief images which were intended to confound the senses and weaken My resistance. But I was not allowed to push these evil spirits aside.... I had to try to pacify them, I also had to let love come to the fore because I realised that they, too, were pitiful beings under the adversary's control which should also be released from him one day. And therefore I did not use force against these evil spirits but had to exercise patience and gentleness, I had to resist them and calm them down through My willingness to love until they let go of Me by themselves....

I was a human being and had to fight and suffer like a human, because all this was part of the act of Salvation I wanted to accomplish for My fallen brothers.... For at the same time I also wanted to show people how they can master their weaknesses and cravings, I wanted to exemplify to them the life which should help them gain freedom and achieve unification with the eternal Father.... I wanted to prove to them that it is possible to resist all temptation with the strength of love, that love is the first and last condition in order to live earthly life successfully, to become perfect and to unite with God.... The love in Me made Me, as a human being, realise the cause of the wretched state, just as you humans can only gain the right understanding through love. And the love in Me also gave me the strong will to carry out the act of Salvation on account of which My soul had embodied itself on earth.... As a human being I knew that I would only be able to accomplish this act with the strength of God's love, and therefore I called for 'Love', I beseeched It to give Itself to Me, and thus also shaped Myself appropriately to receive God's strength of love in Me.... I tried to resist all cravings, I denied entry to all impure thoughts the adversary wanted to awaken in Me, time and again I confronted him

with My love from which he had to flee, and thus soon only love filled My heart. I formed an increasingly more heartfelt bond with the Eternal Love Which gave Itself to Me and thus also made Me become increasingly stronger, so that I approached the final goal of My earthly existence with a firm will. Yet the adversary did not stop besieging My body time and again with ever fiercer temptations as My intention became more evident to him.... And I had to fight him until My end.... time and again My human nature emerged in Me so that, in My weakness, I prayed to the Father 'If Thou be willing, remove this cup from Me....' But the bond with the Father was stronger and I utterly succumbed to His will.... I foresaw humanity's boundless misery and the love which constantly grew more powerful was ready for humanity's rescue mission.... A human being suffered and died the death on the cross, yet this human being was merely a shell for Me Myself, I was able to take abode in Him, and it was **Love** which accomplished the act of Salvation, it was **Love** which redeemed humanity's guilt of sin and this Love was I Myself....

Amen

Jesus' battle as a 'human being'....

B.D. No. 7872

April 14th 1961

When I came into the world as a human being, the Deity in Me was tremendously active for I brought love with Me to earth, which permeated Me from the start and only applied to My eternal Father.... And thus extraordinary things happened at My birth which you present-day humans no longer want to believe but which provided the people around Me with the evidence that I was the announced Messiah. Thus I brought **love** along to Earth.... but I had to forfeit the light, for people would have been unable to endure its brilliance.... And so I had to start waging the battle with all immature spiritual substances which, by way of My body, harassed the soul, for I had to mature as a 'human being', since I wanted to show people the path towards spiritualisation, which can only be achieved by love. Consequently, I had to try to pacify everything of an immature nature pestering Me, through the love inherent in Me I had to try to influence it such that it would abandon its desire, that it would subordinate itself to the soul's desire and thus spiritualise and unite itself with the soul while I was still living on earth. This battle was truly not an easy one, for the human nature within Me had the same craving, the same longing for fulfilment as is the case with all people and despite My origin from above My nature was no different than that of you humans.... The world and its enticements attracted Me just as much as you, only My soul distanced itself from it because, due to its indwelling love, it recognised the dangers these worldly enticements offered and because I knew what mission I had to fulfil as 'Jesus, the human being'. Nevertheless, the body demanded its own and thus it was often an extremely difficult battle to comply with the **soul's** desire **and** to firmly resist all temptations. Yet the 'love' in Me gave Me strength, love drew Me irresistibly to the Father and the Father did not deny Himself to Me, He permeated Me progressively more and became active in Me, the 'human being Jesus'.... I realised the extent of adversity suffered by the human race which lacked love and therefore lacked the strength to resist the same temptations.... I knew **why** people were lacking love and that they were ruled by the one who is entirely devoid of love.... Hence I tried to motivate people into living in love.... I exemplified to them a life of love and constantly instructed them.... I gave them the commandments of love for God and one's neighbour.... I attempted to make them understand the consequences of a life of love and proved it to them on Myself.... I healed the sick and performed miracles, and I was able to do so because I allowed the strength of love to become active, for love is God, and thus God Himself worked through Me because He dwelled in Me as the 'Eternal Love'.... People lacked love when I descended to earth but I was permeated by it for I was faithfully and with love devoted to the Father, I had remained with Him when the host of originally created spirits deserted Him.... My love for Him was greater than great and I did not deprive Myself of it when I came down to earth....

My whole way of life was a continuous activity of love.... so that the body soon subordinated itself to this love, that the soul embraced it and together with the body united itself with the Eternal Love **in** Me.... But it would be wrong to say that My earthly path had been less difficult as a result of My

extraordinary abundance of love, because I was extremely strongly influenced by demons besieging Me, which clung to Me and tried to pull Me down.... and which I could not shake off because My 'love' in Me did not allow for it; instead, I had to pacify them and lovingly try to persuade them to let go of Me and also promised them My help to ascend from the abyss to higher spheres again. I did not want to chase these demons away by virtue of My inherent great **power**, consequently I suffered far more than you humans can understand, and only the immense strength of love enabled the accomplishment of My act of Salvation, otherwise I would have fallen prey to the demons Myself which, however, would never have been possible because love, the Father Himself, dwelled within Me.... You humans are supposed to follow Me, you should likewise start waging the battle against all unspiritual things in and around you.... However, you would be incapable of doing so of your own strength because you still lack love which increases your strength.... But now you can turn to **Me** with an appeal for an influx of strength and it will truly be given to you by grace of the act of Salvation which I acquired on your behalf through My death on the cross. Yet without Me you will not release yourselves from the opposing power, without Me your resolve is too weak and you lack strength.... I Myself waged a very hard battle against My adversary who wanted to prevent Me from accomplishing the act of Salvation but **I** won the battle though love and want to **help** you because you are too weak. For you live in an entirely unspiritual world, you live in the world of the fallen spirit and are held captive by its prince. But I have redeemed you from his power and thus you can achieve the same as I.... so that you will emerge victoriously from the battle against all worldly cravings, so that your body will spiritualise itself at the same time as the soul, so that they will unite themselves with the Father of eternity, because you no longer need to accomplish this act by yourselves, you need only come to Me in order to receive the strength to be able to take the path of return to the Father from Whom you once originated. And this influx of strength signifies that love will ignite in you and flare up into brightest radiance, that you bring everything of an unspiritual nature in you into order through love, that you can resist every temptation and that you thereby release yourselves from your opponent.... for then you will be on My side and I will truly liberate you from him....

Amen

Jesus' teaching and activity of love

Bible message is teaching of love.... Jesus' explanation....

B.D. No. 4000

Transcripts....

March 16th 1947

You must be taught by the spirit within you or you will remain without knowledge. But it can only become active if you live a life of love.... And therefore My mission as a human being on earth initially consisted of conveying the divine teaching of love, for the human being's compliance with it first had to change him such that it enabled the spirit within him to become active and only then were further spiritual instructions possible. However, at the time of My life on earth people had so much diverged from love that they had to be informed time and again and in ever greater detail of the consequences of their heartlessness and the commandment of love had to be constantly preached to them, and I was only able to initiate a few into profound knowledge. Yet it would not have been wise on My part to impart this knowledge to people in general, because without love it remains dead knowledge without result. And therefore it was My will that My disciples' transcripts were preserved in such a form that they indeed lack profound knowledge but nevertheless contain the teaching of love, and anyone who follows it will also penetrate into deeper knowledge if he seriously desires it.

I Myself have certainly shared an abundance of knowledge on earth, yet I also knew My listeners' hearts, I was aware of their degree of love, their will and their realisation of My Personality which made them accept the knowledge they were offered as the only truth. I also instructed My disciples and through pouring out My spirit after My ascension I enabled them to impart to their fellow human beings the same information they received through the spirit, and thus people who were brought the Gospel by My disciples were well taken care of, but since a life of love is always a prerequisite in order to understand profound spiritual knowledge and derive the blessing from it, the commandment of love was intended to be passed on to future generations and was therefore written down by My disciples on My instructions, so that it would be preserved as I had taught it on earth. And My way of life, which was meant to serve as an example to all people, was also a subject of the transcripts which, as My disciples' legacy, were left to humanity but which are missing more profound knowledge because this is My will. For anyone who wants to draw the knowledge from the Scriptures, which indeed include My Word, but who is without love would not know what to do with it, because spiritual knowledge is the light which is only kindled through love, which can only burst into full radiance when the human being's spirit awakens and then enlightens the person from within. Academically imparted knowledge is only valuable if it can be examined and assimilated in order to become intellectual property, but this is only ever possible with the spirit's assistance, which therefore makes love indispensable.

What is therefore more understandable than that I Myself on earth as well as in the transcripts, which came about according to My will, only ever taught love and that the commandment of love must only ever be presented to people first and foremost? What is more understandable than that the human being cannot be admonished often enough to comply with this commandment in order to attain psychological maturity? All further knowledge is just the result of a life of love and will be imparted to each individual person as is beneficial to him. For as soon as his spirit has become active he can receive unlimited knowledge, since the degree of wisdom he wants is determined by himself, and then he will no longer need to accept it from books but it will be offered to him directly from the spiritual kingdom which, however, can only be understood by a person who has awakened the spirit within himself through complying with My commandment of love, which will never be comprehensible to those who live without love and try to gain their knowledge from books. This is just dead knowledge, only the spirit will give life.... only love will grant complete understanding....

Amen

Jesus heard the Word of God.... Mediator between God and people....

B.D. No. 6145
December 25th 1954

When Jesus lived on earth as a human being the connection between Earth and the spiritual kingdom was established.... God Himself was once again able to speak to people through the mouth of Jesus, the man.... His Word could be heard again, which previously was impossible due to the vast distance which existed between humanity and God. It is only possible to hear His voice directly if a person's soul has so shaped itself that it is capable of hearing the voice of the divine spirit within itself; and the soul is shaped into this state through activity of love.... The human being Jesus was Love Itself.... His sole thoughts and intentions aimed to benefit His fellow human beings, to help them in all adversity of body and soul. His soul was clear and pure and His life on earth was a life of love.... All preconditions were in place which enabled the divine spirit to express itself, for the soul of the man Jesus heard these Words clearly and distinctly and was therefore able to inform people of God's Word.... God Himself was able to speak to people, the connection between God and people had been restored by Him.... Jesus was the mediator between God and people.... And thus Jesus taught people to strive towards the same that He Himself had achieved.... He taught them to exercise love in order to prepare themselves as a vessel for the divine spirit into which the strength of the spirit could pour, for **every person** should and was able to hear God's voice within himself. And the path was shown to him by the man Jesus, Who also first had to attain the degree of love which assured Him God's presence, so that he was able to hear Him within Himself. Although God can speak to every person He will never do so unless the conditions have been fulfilled first.... a heart purified by love which can admit God Himself Who then will demonstrate His presence through His Word.... The man Jesus possessed an extraordinarily high degree of maturity of soul because He was utterly permeated by love.... Hence it was possible for **God Himself** to permeate Him completely, and so God spoke through the man Jesus to people and it was no longer the man Jesus but God Himself. He achieved of His own accord what led to the unification with God....

But He instructed His fellow human beings, He also wanted help them attain the success which He had gained through His love and therefore He first taught them to love.... and again and again only love.... Out of His great love came wisdom, for the spirit of God instructed people through Jesus.... Out of the fire of His love radiated the light of realisation.... Jesus knew that people, too, would be permeated by the light of realisation if only they lived up to love **first**.... this is why people were not taught more profound knowledge since **this** is the **result** of a life of love without which it remains ineffective for the human being's soul. Only love connects the human being to God, only love achieves that God will take abode in a person, and only love motivates Him to express Himself.... And thus someone living a life of love will hear the Word of God inside of him, he will be guided into the most profound knowledge, he will be able to say that he is taught by God, he hears His Word and is thereby united with Him through love.... The man Jesus demonstrated to people that it is possible to achieve this degree and therefore showed them the path which leads from the abyss to higher spheres again.... to the Father.... He taught love, He lived love and finally crowned His way of life with His death on the cross in order to release people from all weaknesses which became their share due to their past sin.... so that people would have the strength to take the path, so that God's spirit would be able to pour into all those who are willing to follow Him.... who live a life of unselfish neighbourly love as He had exemplified to them on earth....

Amen

Jesus taught love on Earth....

B.D. No. 8454
March 31th 1963

Jesus' soul brought love along with it to earth and therefore He was able to take excessive suffering upon Himself, since love gave Him the strength to do so. He knew that people were especially

lacking love and were therefore weak and powerless. Although they also sheltered a tiny spark of love, hence they were **capable** of love, nevertheless, they were unwilling to love because it was smothered by My adversary.... who increasingly stimulated their selfish love and prevented selfless love from coming through. Consequently Jesus exemplified a life of love to people.... Jesus only treated His fellow human beings with kindness, He healed their afflictions, He comforted them and helped wherever help was needed.... He was unselfish and always willing to ease people's fate on earth....

He taught them **why** they should live a life of love, He warned them of the consequences of a heartless way of life, just as He repeatedly demonstrated to them the effects of a life of love and provided the proof Himself by being capable of great feats of strength, by healing the sick and performing miracles by virtue of His constantly increasing love.... for He was closely united with God, the Eternal Love Itself.... And therefore Jesus taught people to establish the bond with God, their eternal Father, which can only take place through love and through heartfelt prayer....

All this had become unfamiliar to people and only a few lived a life of love, but they soon recognised Jesus as the promised Messiah, they recognised in Him the Father.... This love had kindled a small light in them which subsequently was nourished by Jesus' teaching and made the darkness recede.... And this doctrine was meant to be spread among the human race, for this reason He educated His disciples Himself, sending them into the world with the instruction to proclaim Him, His act of Salvation and the Gospel of love, because people should be shown the right path which leads to eternal life....

However, Jesus would never have been able to accomplish this act of Salvation had He not been full of love, but love achieves everything, no limits exist for love.... nothing is impossible for it, nothing exists that love could not overcome.... for as a human being it would have been impossible to survive such an extent of suffering and pain as was imposed upon Him.... But the strength of love helped Him to be victorious.... by virtue of love He endured the most bitter suffering and excruciating death on the cross and only gave up His life when the act was accomplished....

Only then was it possible for a person to release himself from the adversary who kept him in bondage as long as the guilt of sin had not been redeemed.... Only after Jesus' crucifixion were people able to appeal for strength and reinforcement from Jesus Christ, in Whom God Himself, as the Eternal Love, had died.... People are no longer at the mercy of God's adversary and his arbitrary use of power, they can detach themselves from him if they pray to Jesus for help and through a life of love acquire the strength to fulfil God's will.

Consequently, it is most important in earthly life that the Gospel is proclaimed to people, which removes the dense darkness from people and lets them find faith in Jesus Christ as Son of God and Redeemer of the world, and which will always grant the strength to complete the earthly path successfully.... For love is strength, without love a person remains weak and cannot reach his goal, on account of which he lives on earth.... But neither can there be light on this earth without love, for it is the realm of God's adversary who spreads dense darkness with the aim of preventing the recognition of God and not to lose his followers but who can be recognised in the light as an enemy....

Where love is preached, the faith in Jesus Christ can also be awakened if only people are willing to live up to the commandments of love. And thus the labourers in the vineyard of the Lord shall diligently work and spread the Word of God, which will always consist of the divine commandments of love, because people must be informed of the fact that only love will gain them spiritual advancement, that only love will grant them the strength to improve themselves, and that love also bestows upon them the light which reveals extensive knowledge so that they will consciously travel their earthly path.... conscious of their task and their goal.... and do their utmost to strive for it.... As soon as they acknowledge Jesus Christ, as soon as they know that God Himself has accomplished the act of Salvation in Jesus Christ and then consciously hand themselves over to Him, they will also be released from their original sin and reach the goal on earth and the final union with their God and Father of eternity....

Amen

I came into the world for the weak, sick and needy, for the strong and healthy did not require Me, they found their own way, at least they believed they could, and only when they went astray did they recognise their weakness and called for Me.... when their own strength did not suffice to master their lives. All those who call for Me, who need Me, are weak and their souls are ailing, and all those will be helped by Me, because by calling for Me they acknowledge their distressed state, from which they hope to be rescued by Me. All you humans are weak and ill, and good for those who recognise it.... However, those who feel strong and healthy are in a bad way, for they cannot be helped.... And there are many who believe that they don't need help, there are many who are convinced of their own strength and very easily use the strength of the one who wants to gain them for himself, who increases their arrogant belief and therefore gives them strength, but not without a service in return.... He wants the soul and in exchange gives the body what it wants....

I, however, Am the physician of the sick and weak, I Am the comforter of the sorrowful and the hope of the disheartened.... They all come to Me and they will not ask in vain, I agree to help them all even if they do not experience it immediately. But in that case I also know why, and yet you are not abandoned, for no one who calls to Me for help from the bottom of his heart will ever call to Me in vain. Come unto Me, all you who are weak and heavily laden, I will refresh you.... Thus I have promised you My help, and so you will certainly receive it.... Always remember this when you are confronted by hardship, when you feel physically or psychologically distressed, when earthly life is a heavy burden to you, when you need help. Then remember that I once and at any time came to the poor, sick and weak and only await your call to reveal Myself to you, but that I want to be called upon, so that you freely recognise your weakness and ask for Me, your physician and helper, that your call demonstrates your faith that I can and will help you.... and I will never allow this faith to be destroyed....

Amen

Jesus' activity on Earth....

When I lived on earth I taught you humans the Gospel of love, for you should develop the love within you into utmost perfection and also be aware of its consequences, which you were able to identify by My activity.... I was only able to heal the sick and perform miracles on account of My indwelling love, which permeated Me completely and subsequently resulted in unity with the Father.... the Eternal Love.... which is the goal of every being created by the Father. Thus I exemplified a life of love to you and only ever treated My neighbourhood with love.... Consequently I was able to teach in all wisdom, I was able to enlighten people's spiritual darkness since this light of wisdom came forth from the fire of My love. For this reason you humans will only gain realisation when you live a life of love, for love is the flow of divine light which illuminates a person's heart so that he can attain profound knowledge, which provides clarification about himself and his relationship with God, his Father of eternity.... People spent their lives in complete darkness, their thinking was wrong because their hearts lacked love and thus they lacked the fire which could emit a light.... And I came to them, I came into the midst of the human race, but they did not know Me and rejected the light.... They persecuted and attacked Me because their heartless way of life was also a life of sin. Yet I repaid all evil only with love, I compassionately took care of their suffering, I relieved them from ailments and only ever taught love, because this was the only remedy, both earthly as well as spiritually.... And there were only a few who recognised Me, who followed Me and made an effort to live a life of love, and they became enlightened and joined Me.... because they also recognised in Me the Messiah, the Saviour from severe adversity Who had long been announced to them through prophets. But only a

few believed My Words and lived accordingly, who lived with love and were guided through the spiritual darkness into the light.... for the light lived in the midst of them....

I constantly preached love and, time and again, I will proclaim to people the divine teaching of love, I will present it as being of paramount importance and admonish all people to live a life of love like Me in order to thereby gain the realisation of why they live on earth, what their task consists of and what they should strive for.... As soon as a small glimmer of light has fallen into their hearts, as soon as they unite with Me, as the Eternal Love, through unselfish kind-hearted activity, they will become increasingly more enlightened, they will become more knowledgeable and this knowledge will indeed correspond to truth because I, Truth and Love, are one.... He who lives in love will be united with Me and also know the truth.... He will have stepped out of the spiritual night into the light and all darkness will have left him. Only love can achieve this, consequently the Gospel of love will be proclaimed to you time and again, and any concepts conveyed to you from external sources must always kindle love in your hearts, they must always consist of admonitions to live your life on earth in love. Time and again you must change yourselves into love, you must fight against selfish love and try to change it into unselfish neighbourly love.... I must be presented to you as a God of love, Whom you can only reach through love.... For love is everything.... it is strength and light, it is bliss.... Anyone who lives without love is still burdened by darkness and his earthly path is obscure to him.... Anyone who has shaped himself into love will no longer fear anything, for he recognises his God and Creator as a loving Father and strives consciously towards Him.... Love liberates, it liberates from all bondage, love bestows happiness and grants bliss in abundance.... Love comes from Me and leads back to Me again.... For love connects the child with the Father.... Love grants the greatest happiness while still on earth and then again one day in eternity, for Love is God, It unites Father and child for all eternity....

Amen

Extracts from Jesus' doctrine of love

‘He who remains in love remains in Me and I in him....’

B.D. No. 2147

November 11th 1941

Remain in Me so that I can unite with you. Your life shall be a continuous activity of love. You should do everything as a matter of innermost impulse, and this impulse shall be love, the most beautiful and sacred feeling, which you should allow to dominate you. Anyone who lives in love is engrossed in Me, anyone who lives in love remains forever united with Me, for he is what I Am Myself.... he is love, as I Myself Am love.... Then peace will be within you, for the marriage of your spirit with Me has taken place, it is no longer outside of Me but in Me, for it is My share for eternity. Then I Myself will be with you and where I Am there must be peace and love and harmony. And if you live in unity with Me, your life on earth will neither be conflict nor worry, for then I will fight on your behalf and take your worries upon Me, for I love you because you are My Own since the beginning. But first you must completely hand yourselves over to Me, you must sacrifice everything to Me, you must so love Me that you willingly sacrifice everything for Me, and you must prove this love to Me by striving to treat your fellow human beings in the same way as you would like to treat Me. I want you to prove your love for Me through your love for your fellow human beings.... It is My will that you should help each other, that one is willing to suffer on behalf of the other, that you serve each other with love. Then your activity of love on earth will be blessed, it will result in the most magnificent reward. I will be with you and place you into a state of profound peace and silent beatitude. For this is the promise I gave you, and My Word always remains the same ‘He who remains in love remains in Me and I in him....’

Amen

‘Blessed are the merciful....’

B.D. No. 3460

March 9th 1945

Blessed are the merciful, who support their neighbour in adversity and hardship and help him overcome it.... My grace visibly rests upon them for they fulfil My commandments, they love Me Myself because they meet their neighbour, My living creation, with love.... Someone helpless and forsaken will feel grateful for the love offered to him; it will awaken reciprocated love, the significance of which cannot be assessed by you on earth.... the fact that every spark of love signifies a release from the opposing power, a change which starts the return to Me, which can only take place in love. Loving help will always be comforting for a person in any earthly and spiritual adversity. Love gives strength, after all, it originates from Me, the eternal love, and can only have a life-giving effect. Helping someone brings forth positive thoughts and feelings, it touches the other person's soul and encourages similar actions, and every activity of love distances a person from My adversary, hence it shortens his distance from Me. Carrying out merciful deeds are essential in times of trouble, when body and soul are ailing, when physical ailments must be the results of psychological adversity, so that people will come to their senses and find the path to Me. And you show this path to them if you practise mercy, if, in unselfish neighbourly love, you lift up your fellow human being in body and soul with kind deeds, comforting words of encouragement and loving care. Then body and soul will be able to recover, for the latter feels the strength of love and becomes strong and willing to strive towards Me.... Love will awaken love in return and where the spark of love has been kindled I Myself can work, because I can be wherever love exists. And where I Am the adversity will ease.... according to the degree of love the person feels. Therefore, try eagerly to arouse reciprocated love and you will redeem the souls through your works of mercy.... Redeeming souls, however, will lead to a blissful

fate in the beyond for you, where only love will be valued and the souls will forever be thankful to you that you showed them the right way....

Amen

‘Become as little children....’

B.D. No. 3624

December 10th 1945

Become as little children and take refuge with Me in every adversity.... and don't be afraid, for your heavenly Father does not allow anything to happen that is not beneficial for you. Have faith and trust in Me, your Father of eternity, that I will hold My hands protectively over you and simply regard every ailment of the body as a caring way of helping your soul. However, you should know that the body's adversity, too, will be cured by Me if you firmly believe in it and recognise My Fatherly love in everything, regardless of what happens. Be as carefree as children and leave it to the Father to take care of you, just make sure you fulfil your heavenly Father's will and My Fatherly love will take hold of you and draw you to My heart. Don't ask and speculate fearfully what might become of you, but remain calm and simply wait for the Father's help if adversity weighs you down. Totally rely on Me Who guides you wherever you go. Your strength rests in your childlike trust and humble prayer, for I will not disappoint this and grant your prayer at all times. Yet do not worry and doubt.... My Fatherly love will save you from every danger and the call of My child will never go unheeded.... But in order to become as children you must relinquish all resistance, you must only ever want Me to lead you by the hand and you must follow Me willingly and never want to take different paths.... And thus you must pray with faithful trust and devotedly rely on Me and then regard every happening as My will.... For it is My will, nothing happens against My will if you commend your problems to Me. Only someone who acts on his own, without having appealed for My blessing and My support, activates his will with appropriate results, yet not always in his favour. I cannot grant My help to him because he would not recognise it as My help but regard it as his own merit. Yet for My children I will even out their every path, even if it appears difficult to travel. Just hand yourselves over to My guidance with complete trust and you will always feel a loving Fatherly hand which will guide you safe and sound through every calamity of this world. And always draw comfort and strength from My Word.... Let the Father speak to His children, and accept every Word of love so that it will impel you to love in turn. Never let the Father's voice go unheeded but be glad that you may hear it, that the Father thereby reveals His love for you, and follow Him and His Word with joyful zest.... And you will gain My approval, you will feel My Fatherly love increasingly more, you will no longer fear any adversity and be safe and secure in My heart....

Amen

‘I Am the way, the truth, and the life....’

B.D. No. 3767

May 11th 1946

Only truth can lead to eternal life for you, for I Am the truth Myself and only through Me can you enter the eternal kingdom.... I Am the way, the truth and the life.... if you know the truth you will also take the right path which aims towards eternal life. Pure truth is the result of activity of love and this is the only way of changing the soul's state of death into a state of life. Therefore, since I Am the eternal Love, I Am the way to Myself for My living creations, they must enter this path without fail in order to reach Me, Who alone gives them the eternal life. And in order to follow Me, in order to live a life of love on earth, they must be guided into truth, that is, they must first be taught how to shape their earthly life in order to then, through their compliance with My teaching, also be able to recognise the pure truth from Me, since without love all knowledge remains dead knowledge, it remains intellectual knowledge but not the knowledge of the heart, which alone gives life. I Am the way, the truth and the life.... I you seek Me you will enter the right path and find the truth and thus also acquire eternal life. I will come close to anyone who desires the truth for the sake of truth and guide him on the path of love, and if he does not resist his spirit will awaken to life and instruct him according to

truth.... Then he will have found Me and will never lose Me again, he will be alive and can never die again.... Yet only true love can accomplish this, which is the result of unselfish loving actions.... No misguided teaching will lead to unity with Me, every misguided teaching extends the path of ascent, it feigns another goal to people and only a firm will to reach the right goal averts the great danger of going completely astray. However, without Me you will not find the right way, you must call upon Me, you must accept My instructions, you must take the path which I exemplified on earth, the path of love, in order to attain the truth, the recognition of Me Myself and eternal life. You must live in love because you cannot unite yourselves with Me without love, because I, the eternal Love, Am also the ultimate goal of the path of love and because you are still spiritually dead, that is, entirely without realisation, with no knowledge of divine wisdom, as long as your nature is totally alien to My fundamental nature, and therefore you cannot live as long as you don't unite with Me, which can only take place through love....

Amen

The fulfilment of prayer in firm belief.... 'Father, Your will be done....'

B.D. No. 3927

December 2nd 1946

You can obtain everything from Me, if you only believe in Me firmly and steadfastly.... For if you bear My greater than great love for you in mind you will also know that I will not leave any prayer unanswered. However, firm faith in Me also includes absolute trust in Me, it includes the certainty that I, in My wisdom, also recognise everything that is a blessing for you, and that I will not allow you to be harmed by granting you something that will not be beneficial for you. And this is why a profoundly devout human being will hand himself over to Me unconditionally, he will leave it up to Me what I choose to give to him, he will not demand but humbly present his requests to Me, always making My will most important and commending himself to My love and grace. And I will give to him abundantly; I will never let him go short physically and spiritually, for I will never close My ears to My child's prayer. If, however, I deny you the fulfilment of a request then don't doubt My love anyway, for it is precisely My love which wants to protect you from harm. And you, yourselves, are not always able to recognise the effect of a fulfilled request. Therefore, present your wishes to Me trustingly and leave everything else to Me, and My love will consider you such that your path to Me will run smoothly, so that you will safely reach your goal, so that you will return as My children into the Father's house in order to live a blissful life in eternity. Yet always and forever make use of the strength of prayer, call upon Me in every situation in life, come to Me if you are in difficulty and also think of Me in hours of peace and quiet.

Don't forget Me so that I will not forget you either, and establish contact with Me quite often through heartfelt prayer, and thereby constantly call Me close to you, then strength without measure will flow to you, if you look for Me of your own free will, if your thoughts apply to Me and your heart is urging towards Me. You have to find the way to Me yourselves and therefore enter the bridge which I have established for you from earth to Me.... You have to pray, for in prayer your soul is rising into the spheres of light, in prayer you enter the bridge to Me, in prayer the child steps in front of the Father, it establishes the relationship of a child to its Father, as it is My will. And if I Am called upon as Father when a childlike heart is beating for Me I will answer every beseeching request, for I will not disappoint My children who come to Me in complete trust. And My love will express itself to them, My love will hand out gifts in abundance, My love will take care of the child spiritually and earthly, and it will never ever again have to suffer adversity if its appeal to Me is truly childlike, that is, if it sends its prayer to Me in spirit and in truth.

You all should make use of the grace of prayer, for you are able to achieve everything in firm, living faith in Me and My love.... Yet don't demand and complain or grumble if I seemingly won't grant your prayer, for then My Fatherly love knows that the fulfilment of your prayer will only cause you harm, and in order to protect you from this it will deny itself.... Yet anyone who always submits his will to

Mine will never be disappointed, for his is the true prayer which is pleasing to Me if he adds to all his requests 'Father, Your will be done....'

Amen

Parable of the good shepherd....

B.D. No. 4360

July 2nd 1948

I want to give you a parable, and you should learn from this how I want My Word to be understood: My earthly children are like a flock of scattered sheep which an enemy's ill will had chased from the shepherd's view into all directions. And the shepherd, who loves his sheep, goes in search for them. He looks for them in the most hidden places, he scales mountains and clambers down gorges, he calls and cajoles and does not rest until his flock is rounded up again. He helps the lambs that lost their way and cannot return by themselves, he follows the long tracks where they already went too far, he takes the tired lambs and carries them back on his shoulders, he leaves none to their fate, to his enemy, who might rob him of it and add it to his own flock. Because he knows his sheep, and his sheep know him and follow his voice.... And the good shepherd's heart rejoices when he has found all his sheep again, when his full flock is in his stable, when every lost lamb has found its way home....

You all are My sheep, you belong to My flock, which nevertheless has free run and therefore can also go astray if it strives for another goal but Me. The hostile shepherd is My adversary who tries to turn you away from Me. And he will often succeed.... My sheep stray from the path I take with My flock, they seek to scale the heights.... You humans seek honour and riches and for their sake leave the path. You fall into ravines and pits, vices and lusts capture you, step by step you descend into the abyss and can be grateful if you get caught by hedges and undergrowth if second thoughts arise in you which you don't ignore and are thus spared the deepest fall until your Saviour arrives.

Still others graze in strange pastures; they go astray and don't find their way back to their stable.... These are the people who thoughtlessly wander through earthly life, who are beneficiaries of actions which do not correspond to My will but give them great earthly advantage. They do not deem themselves bad, they are half-hearted, neither for nor against Me, they wander through the earthly valley oblivious of their earthly task, they have to be startled and chased back, so that they take refuge in My arms again Who, as a good shepherd, is ready to receive them at anytime.

I have to search for My lost lambs everywhere.... My call has to be heard everywhere and thus My voice has to sound time and again.... time and again I have to approach people in My Word and call them back into the Father's house. My Word is the call of the good shepherd, My Word is conveyed to human beings with love, My Word penetrates into all corners, wherever it finds entry into people's hearts. And anyone who does not follow My call will stray ever more or descend ever deeper.... And yet, the arm of the good shepherd will reach him one day, even if it takes ages.... Even the person who has resisted Me for a long time will return to Me one day.... one day he will tire of his wrong path and allow Me to lift him onto My shoulders, one day he, too, will willingly follow the good shepherd, the sound of His voice will entice him.... He will recognise it as the Father's voice and follow Me, and I will guide him into the Father's house and prepare a feast for joy for him of finding again what had been lost....

Amen

'No-one can serve two masters....'

B.D. No. 4408

August 18th 1948

No-one can serve two masters.... Anyone who wants to make contact with Me will never be able to look towards the world, for I can only be found beyond the world, and if I should allow Myself to be found then the desire for the world must be put aside, it must be completely ignored, for the world belongs to My adversary, it is his domain where he has free reign. And he really does not aspire to lead people to Me by way of the world, instead, he seeks to displace Me, he constantly tries to place

special emphasis on the world so that I should be forgotten. So if anyone amongst you is serious about his higher development he cannot possibly still pay tribute to the world.... even though he is still in the midst of the world which makes great demands on him which he has to comply with, yet there is indeed a difference between duty and personal worldly longing. The former is entirely according to My will, for on earth you are given a task, but apart from that you can also fully accomplish your spiritual task, the maturing of your soul, if the desire for the world does not prevail, which happens when earthly pleasures and cravings predominate the desire for spiritual possessions, so that thereby the human being forgets about Me and, indeed, even the thought of Me is uncomfortable leading to his dismissal of Me. Anyone who strives to create an excessive sense of well-being for himself, i.e. for his body, be it through satisfying physical cravings, sensory and carnal desires or through an accumulation of material possessions without thinking of his neighbour, who therefore only strives for himself, is held captive by the world, he is My adversary's willing tool, and he will never find the path to Me if he does not discard the longing for the earthly world, internalises himself and aspires towards spiritual wealth. Both together are not possible, for then he will serve two masters and will not serve either well. If you are looking for Me you must gaze heavenwards, for I Am above and not below.... Below is My adversary's realm where you still linger with your body, but your soul can always lift itself up into My kingdom, to Me. Even though the body is still in My adversary's realm, the soul can nevertheless always rise into spheres beyond the earth, and that is what I demand of someone who wants to find Me, serve Me and thus be one of My Own. Then the spiritual spark in him will unite itself with the eternal Father-Spirit, for if he strives towards Me in all seriousness his heart will also be awash with love, which has nothing in common with worldly love. This love will manifest itself towards the next person, in which case the human being is making contact with Me already.... he renounces what belongs to the world, he gives and thus serves his neighbour and, because I decreed this commandment he also serves Me as His Lord. Worldly love, however, is a form of selfish love, the human being should combat this love if he wants to attain bliss. Consequently, he must also combat his love for the world and try to fulfil the soul's wishes which, driven by the spirit within, will apply to spiritual possessions and demonstrate love for Me. For I alone Am the Master you should serve if you want to become blissfully happy....

Amen

'I will send you the Comforter....' (Explanation of apparent contradictions)

B.D. No. 4580

March 5th 1949

My spirit will guide you into truth, as I have promised: I will send you the Comforter, the Spirit of truth, which will guide you into all truth and will remind you of everything I have said to you.... Thus anyone allowing this spirit of Mine to become effective in him will also know the truth and can accept everything conveyed to him by My spirit. Think very seriously about this for once and you will know what originates from Me and can be believed by you. As soon as you recollect My Words which I spoke on earth to My disciples as well as to all other people, you will not be able to dismiss the fact that you can receive the pure truth in the way I told you with the Words: I will send you the Comforter, the Spirit of truth.... And prior to My Words I said that I will take abode in those Who prepare their heart for Me, that I will not abandon them, that I will reveal Myself to those who love Me and keep My commandments....

It therefore follows that My revelations must come from within, that I, once I have taken abode in a person's heart, will also manifest Myself therein with the result that the person will hear My voice through the inner Word.... And this is proof again that you may unhesitatingly trust this voice, for it is the expression of My love for My Own, who are counted as My Own because they accepted Me Myself in their hearts, because I was able to take abode in them. Hence you possess My Word, the announcement of My will, the truth in its purest form. Therefore you need not be taught from outside if you acknowledge Me as your Teacher and entrust yourselves directly to Me. Direct communication between you and Me is therefore possible, and in order to be truthfully educated you must acknowledge this first. Then you will strive to receive the truth from the original source and will also

be able to believe with conviction what is imparted to you. For this knowledge comes to you in a fully conscious state; I speak to you and you hear Me.

But I speak to you through your heart and your heart hears My voice, not your physical ear, which can only hear externally spoken words. If you inwardly hear My Word then you will know that I Am expressing Myself; alternatively, if you hear the Word from outside then you need to ascertain its origin, for anything can be offered to you from outside, My adversary also approaches you from outside, and then you should seriously examine it, and if you examine it seriously then you also have the will to find the source of what you are offered in Me. If you therefore want to hear Me speak I will certainly grant your wish, in which case every Word you receive will be true if it is imparted to you through My devoted servants. Let this be a sure sign to you: that I will answer your every question if you present it to Me.

You are all always taught in a way that matches your maturity; you can only grasp profound wisdom once you have reached a specific degree of maturity, when the explanation from the spiritual kingdom can be given to you unveiled, which will be understandable to you if you compare it with My activity on earth, where I always spoke to people in parables, in metaphorical language, in order to explain it to them. These veiled teachings are intended to stimulate a person's thinking, so that he penetrates spiritual knowledge and does not just superficially accept it with his physical ears. If I impart My Word unveiled, as I do now, then the degree of maturity which guarantees the correct understanding is a prerequisite. Words to that effect will not differ as soon as both the veiled and the direct Word from above come in unveiled form from the same source, as soon as every teaching has originated from Me.

But first you must examine this and you need only appeal for My help in order to pass the right judgment. Bear in mind that the adversary works as well, and especially when people try to escape from him, when they strive for truth in order to learn to recognise and love Me. Then he will always try to extinguish or obscure the light and be very active where the opportunity presents itself.

In order to help you humans and to undermine the activity of this said power I provide you with information through bearers of light where impure influences have led your thinking astray. That which comes from above is truth, and that which comes from below are errors and lies.... Where direct inner spiritual activity can be recognised it can only be the working of forces from above which receive and forward My illumination. However, where forces avail themselves of a human form in an unconscious state, caution is advised, for a passive form can also be used by a dark force, if only for a short time, yet fellow human beings themselves often determine the statements made through this form with their own thoughts and wishes, which are instantly picked up by these forces which will then audibly express themselves through this form. For, as soon as some of the listeners have strong willpower their thoughts will also exert a strong influence and, depending on their truth, they will be seized by either forces of light or of darkness and audibly expressed. For this reason the human being should always let go of his own knowledge when he receives spiritual knowledge, he should humbly and like a small child without knowledge allow himself to be taught, then purest truth will flow to him, because no resistance exists to prevent it....

Many will take exception to the fact that a seeming contradiction comes to light, yet My spirit has always revealed the same to people, it was simply not understood by everyone in the same way, and even those who received My Word were not free of their own thoughts as soon as they turned their eyes towards the world and associated world events with the spiritual information. Besides, My eternal plan of Salvation was unknown to people at the time I lived on earth, and the explanations I gave to people about future times were presented such that only someone who had completely shaped himself into love would have been able to form a correct idea about the last days, about the last Judgment and the end. The others lacked realisation and a clear portrayal would not have been beneficial for them, since the especially announced judgment was still ahead of them, the destruction of Jerusalem, which likewise signified the chapter of an era for these people and was nearer to them than the end. So people were certainly informed of a renewal, of a spiritual change, but with an

additional remark which related more to the change of people than the transformation of Earth, because the knowledge of the latter would have been detrimental to their spiritual state....

But now I approach **those** people who will live through the final chapter on this earth.... I approach those who have attained a certain degree of maturity and therefore also the understanding for the coming events. To these I provide complete clarification and instruct them to inform their fellow human beings of it. However, they will only be believed by those who become discerning and spiritually enlightened through genuine striving for perfection, who know My plan of Salvation and realise that there is no other option but a total transformation of the earth, for the sake of the souls which have fallen to the lowest point and yet shall be redeemed one day. Right now I speak to the people of the last days, but even in the past My Words were not contradictory.... As Jesus, the man, I said what I saw and was prevented from seeing how the end would happen.... I saw the converted human race but not the transformed earth because it was God's wish to keep people uninformed at that time....

The fact that Earth must remain a place of education for the spiritual substances and for how long, that it therefore must continue to exist, was certainly meant to be explained to people, however, the transformation of the earth's surface affects the higher development of the spiritual substances bound in matter and the renewed banishment of a soul which, embodied as a human being, has not passed the test of faith and will.... Neither was comprehensible to humanity, it only differentiated between an earthly world, as it existed, and a purely spiritual world, and it was merely explained to people that the earth, as a world of matter, cannot be excluded as yet and that the development on this earth must still continue for an infinitely long time. For Earth as a planet will not cease to exist after the last Judgment, it will merely fulfil its mission in a completely new formation and thus a new developmental period will start with a paradise-like state.... with those people who are lifted up to heaven before that, because they will prove their loyalty to Me during the last battle of faith, because they will persevere until the end and therefore become blessed in heartfelt unity with Me and the spiritual kingdom of light....

Amen

'Watch and pray, lest ye enter into temptation....'

B.D. No. 4662

June 9th 1949

You should be vigilant and pray, so that you will not fall when you are being tempted.... My adversary's onslaught against those of you who want to remain faithful to Me will be relentless in order to estrange you from Me. He uses all means and not least of all those which intend to disable you from establishing contact with Me, so that he will have an easy game as soon as you are weak. He lies in wait for opportunities to cause your downfall and only someone with a strong will, someone who is able to send a thought up to Me for help will not succumb to him. Call upon Me in every adversity of body and soul.... this is what I call pray and watch.... direct your thoughts upwards where he cannot follow you and you will safely escape from him and place yourselves under My protection. He will try to shackle you to earth with all his might, to that which is his share and which belongs to his realm.... he will want you to abscond from Me, from spiritual striving, he will cause you to doubt and want to confuse your thoughts through adversities and dreads, so that you won't find your way back to Me, so that you will engross yourselves in earthly things and forget about Me.... Watch and pray.... and detach yourselves from the one who is My adversary, and attach yourselves increasingly more to Me, Who is your eternal Father and Who can truly offer you more magnificent things than he can.... Watch and pray, for you are constantly surrounded by the tempter trying to catch you. A vigilant person will be able to recognise and escape from him.... And be joyful and happy in knowing that I Am your constant Protector Whom you can turn to when you are threatened by danger, for I hear the faintest call coming from your heart and will support you so that you will be victorious in your battle against him. But anyone who places too much trust in his own strength and believes that he can do without My help will succumb, for he is overestimating himself and failing to consider that the

adversary's strength is greater than his. You will win with Me but succumb without Me and fall prey to every temptation. But to walk with Me means to allow My presence through prayer and kind-hearted activity.... Then you are protected against all incursions by the enemy, then he will be powerless against you, for then he would have to fight against Me and I Am far more powerful than he is. Watch and pray, then he will have lost his target, he will avoid you, because then you will be surrounded by light which emanates My presence and that is intolerable to him.... Call upon Me in every temptation and I will always be with you....

Amen

My kingdom is not of this world....'

B.D. No. 5336

March 14th 1952

My kingdom is not of this world.... Therefore pay only little regard to the earthly world, only let it affect you as far as your earthly task in life requires, but constantly strive for My kingdom which can be found beyond the material world. My kingdom is the kingdom which lasts forever, whereas the earthly world vanishes with the death of your body; but you can already possess My kingdom on earth if you turn away from the pleasures and commodities of the world and raise your thoughts to Me, if you send them into infinity, questioning Me and opening yourselves up for My reply. Then you already enter the spiritual kingdom which will be your abode one day, then the spiritual kingdom will be of greater value to you than the earthly world, and then you will also receive the wealth which belongs to this kingdom but which cannot be physically received by you. My kingdom is not of this world.... Understand that I want to call you into this world with these Words, which is your true home and which also wants to admit you again after the death of your body. My kingdom is the realm of light, which you will only be able to enter if you have become receptive to light, if you aspired on earth for My kingdom and thus became aspirants for the kingdom which belongs to Me and wherein you may behold Me one day.

These Words of Mine clearly allow you to understand that you should not ardently desire the earthly kingdom, but that you must rise above it if you want to be admitted into My kingdom.... I want to explain the difference to you, I want to tell you that this world does not belong to Me but that My adversary is its master and that I thus place My kingdom in **opposition** to the earthly world.... I want to entice you over into My kingdom because I want to give you what the material world does not offer.... an eternal life in bliss.

Earth is the valley of suffering and tests; it is the place where imperfect human beings are meant to become perfect. Nevertheless, the earth is not a permanent abode; it is just a stage of development of extremely short duration compared to eternity. And the human being himself, his earthly material cover, is transient; it only serves the soul, which ought to achieve higher development, as a temporary abode. Only then will the soul enter the spiritual kingdom which is everlasting but which can still be My adversary's realm if the soul has not achieved spiritual progress on earth, and thus will enter the kingdom of darkness....

Yet you shall strive for **My** kingdom, the spiritual kingdom in which I Am King and Ruler, where only light and happiness exist, where I Myself give in order to delight all who have entered My kingdom.... Therefore pay only little regard to the earthly world, strive for the kingdom which reveals to you splendours which you humans could not dream of, the kingdom whose splendours I have promised you with the Words 'Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, the things which I have prepared for those who love Me....'

Amen

All of you who labour and are heavily laden can take refuge in My arms.... For My love wants to embrace all of you and nobody who comes to Me in his distress and appeals to Me for help will be pushed back by Me.... I want to comfort and give strength, I want to heal wounds and fortify the weak, I want to awaken hope and confidence in all hearts, I want to bestow My blessings upon everyone, because no one's soul can recover without grace. 'Come unto Me, all ye that labour and are heavily laden.... I will give you rest....' However, someone who is weak in faith might well hear these Words but he will not accept them as being spoken to him too.... he will continue to carry his burden, which I would gladly take from him if he handed it over to Me. **Come** to Me.... your own will must impel you to Me, for I only placed the burden upon your shoulders so that you should find the path to Me.... Every adversity is a coaxing call from your heavenly Father Who, in His love, longs for your love, for your coming to Him, in order to be able to please you. And thus, psychological distress shall also lead you to Me, you should entrust everything to Me, for it is My will that you should let Me know what troubles you.... Admittedly, I know all your afflictions and problems, yet I can only help you when you present them to Me, because it is My will that you conduct yourselves like children to the Father, it is My will that you always take the path which all good children take.... the path to the Father Who, in His love, wants to relieve them from every worry and support them with help and advice in order to make them happy now and forever. Take refuge in My arms at all times, they will shield you protectively, carry you across cliffs and stony lanes, they will take loving care of you as long as you live on earth. Put your trust in Me always and forever, for I will push no-one away from Me, even if they are sinful.... I want to release you from sin and guilt, just come unto Me, all ye that labour and are heavily laden.... Call upon My mercy and I will answer your prayer, I will extend My hands to you to make your path to Me easy, for I want to help and heal you, I want to please the sick and weak who can no longer help themselves on their own, and you all shall recognise in Me the One Who has redeemed you because of His boundless love for you....

Amen

'Seek ye first the kingdom of God....'

Only that which helps your soul to attain full maturity can be beneficial for you. If only you always strove towards that which is useful for your soul then I would also take appropriate care of your body, for I gave you the assurance that I will look after you like the birds in the sky and the flowers in the field. You would truly not need to worry about 'tomorrow' if you considered your soul's **salvation paramount**, if you sincerely sought Me and My kingdom. But you humans have forgotten what is most important, your thoughts are fully and completely occupied with the world, with your body's well-being, and thus you are burdened by worries and problems, you let yourselves ever more increasingly be diverted from your actual task on earth, you pay constantly more attention to the world and only create and work for your transient part and don't consider your soul. For you don't believe My Words that I will add everything unto you if you first seek My kingdom and its righteousness.... You don't take these Words seriously and therefore don't test their truthfulness either. But I have only given you earthly life so that your **soul** should mature, for the body will perish, but the soul will exist forever. And the soul should.... not being entirely capable of living.... attain life on earth. This awakening into life should be brought about by you. That is the purpose of your existence as a human being.... and in order that you will be able to accomplish your purpose, you will be supported by Me in every way.... Excessive worry about your body should not hinder the work of improving your soul, for this reason I take care of the former as long as you regard your actual task as more important, as soon as you 'seek My kingdom and its righteousness'. Then you will truly not lack anything, you will be taken care of both physically and spiritually, for I look after your body as well as after your soul and I will provide abundantly, because I love you and want to win your love as well.

However, people remain permanently burdened because they don't give credence to My Words nor do they try to procure the evidence of the truth, on the contrary, they completely ignore the soul's life because they neither strive to reach Me and My kingdom nor want to help their souls to attain a more bearable state. For they have no faith in Me.... Therefore they often have to endure severe suffering; they must go through physical hardship because they don't believe in My promise and faithfully wait for My help, because the well-being of their soul is not their priority and therefore they won't let Me Myself as a Father take care of His children. A little more faith in My Word could manage to achieve a considerable change in people's spiritual state, for as soon as people seriously strive towards Me and My kingdom, they would also keep My easy commandments of love, they would treat their neighbour with love and thus live completely righteously and remain within the divine order. In that case they would already have taken possession of My kingdom and accepted Me, because love would drive them to Me.... I would be able to provide them with everything they need for body and soul, for both physical as well as spiritual possessions could be given to them, as I have promised. Nevertheless, no-one will be forced to believe, but the Word of the Gospel will be recited to everyone 'Seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you....' And every person can spend serious thoughts on this Word; he can make his earthly life easier for himself if he trusts in Me and My Word. First I expect his dedication to Me, which I will then reward him by taking care of his earthly worries, since he will now be a true aspirant for My kingdom. But as long as the human being regards his physical well-being of greater importance than his psychological development he will barely find time to consider his soul, for the body's demands will increase and discard every silent admonition on part of the soul, and the soul will go short and be badly withered at the end of its life on this earth.... for it was unable to gather riches, since the body took precedence. But regardless of what earthly wealth a person has attained and acquired.... he must leave it all behind when the hour of death arrives. The soul, however, will enter the kingdom of the beyond in a bare and deprived state, because the human being had neglected to do in his earthly life what is most important: to seek the kingdom of God and His righteousness....

Amen

'I bestow My grace upon the humble....'

B.D. No. 7057

March 6th 1958

My strength is made perfect in weakness But that does not mean that a person's faith may be weak, instead, it entirely concerns the humility of heart, so that a person recognises himself as weak and unworthy and acknowledges it before Me and that he appeals to Me for grace, which then will also flow to him in abundance. My spirit can only work in a genuinely humble person, for he will entirely hand himself over to Me, he does not request anything for himself but leaves it to Me to decide what I will give to him. And a truly humble person will indeed receive an abundance of blessings. He will make use of them and also be lovingly active of his own accord, because the side-effect of true humility is that it kindles heartfelt love for Me and his neighbour. A humble person has already released himself from My adversary's dominion whose fundamental characteristic is arrogance. Hence he will solely regard coming closer to **Me** as worth striving for and such desire will be supported on My part.... in other Words: the spiritual spark in the human being strives to unite with its eternal Father-Spirit, thus I can also pour out My spirit upon it. However, My spirit can never work where My adversary's characteristic of pride can still be found. For this would simultaneously mean My co-operation with him.... A person must have entered into humility before I can become effective in him.... But what is to be understood by true humility?....

True humility need not be visible to any person through external conduct, through facial expressions or outward behaviour towards his fellow human beings, I solely look upon the humility of heart, the inner admission of weakness and sinfulness, the inner acknowledgment of the being's unworthiness towards his God and Creator and thus also the admission of his guilt as a result of the past sin of apostasy. All beings had certainly once been in My image and, as their Creator, their radiant beauty gladdened Me But they did not remain as they had been.... their whole nature changed into the

opposite and in this state they were no longer able to exist before My eyes. But in their delusion they even rebelled against Me, because they had adopted My adversary's nature, who was exceedingly proud. The return to Me is therefore not possible until the being has discarded its arrogance, until it has changed it into deepest humility, until it recognises its immense depravity and the vast distance from Me and subsequently stretches its hands longingly out to Me for mercy. Then I will truly not hesitate for long, I will take hold of its hands and draw the being close to Me, for in its humility it becomes My child, which the Father lovingly draws to His heart and then showers it with evidence of His love, with an abundance of blessings.... which He can also illuminate again with His spirit. Then the strength of the spirit will be able to manifest itself clearly, the person will demonstrate gifts which are seemingly supernatural but which are, in fact, only the being's original characteristics without which a perfect being is unthinkable: The person will be full of light and strength, that is, he will dispose of extraordinary knowledge as well as of abilities which a person otherwise does not possess. However, despite his obvious bond with God he will nevertheless remain profoundly humble, for humility is a divine characteristic which merely changed into the opposite as a result of the fall. And so you humans will also always have to strive for true humility if you want My spirit to become effective in you as well, for anyone who still harbours a spark of arrogance in him has not yet released himself from My adversary, and the latter will make a constant effort to keep him enchained. And the world offers him many opportunities for this, so that a person will seek increasingly more fame and honour and look down on everything that is small and lowly. But this is also definite proof of his adherence to the adversary, whom you humans should not ignore and beware of such inner attitudes, which are truly still far removed from true humility. Nevertheless, if you want Me Myself to be powerful in you, you must also become conscious of your weakness, for I only bestow My grace upon the humble....

Amen

'Where two or three are gathered....'

B.D. No. 7075

March 28th 1958

Wherever two or three are gathered in My name, there Am I in the midst of them., for every heartfelt thought of Me draws Me near to you, and therefore you can always be certain of My presence if you make Me Myself the subject of your conversations and thoughts. But as soon as I Am present you will also be spiritually illuminated by Me, thus you must also always derive a blessing from it which will be beneficially felt by your soul. And thus you should often gather in My name in order to partake of this blessing, for you constantly need My gift of strength which shall help your soul to progress. Admittedly, every individual person can also seek heartfelt union with Me by handing himself over to Me in thought and thus likewise receive strength in abundance, yet every spiritual conversation is blessed since many souls in the beyond can participate as well and, in turn, spiritually advance themselves. Besides, it also enables Me to intervene in such conversations by steering your thoughts toward questions which occupy the mind of people and the souls in the beyond, which shall be answered to them. You should gather in My name, for by doing so you also prove your love for Me, because every person tries to associate with the object of his love.... People only rarely have the need to exchange their views in spiritual debates; on the contrary, they anxiously avoid displaying their inner attitude.... Spiritual conversations rarely take place, and even less often will people meet for this purpose. And thus they also deny themselves the blessing which they could gain from such meetings. Yet on the other hand they believe that they comply with their spiritual duty in public meetings.... They fail to consider My Words 'Where two or three are gathered together in My name, there Am I in the midst of them....' For these Words should make all those people reconsider in cases where they believe themselves to have sufficiently addressed their spiritual task by taking part in a 'church service' where a person can also easily ponder other more worldly thoughts and where a dedication to Me or a heartfelt bond with Me cannot be spoken of. Time and again I must point out to people that I only value a living faith, that I Am not satisfied with Pseudo-Christendom.... Time and again I must emphasise that I desire to be in contact with every individual person, but that this contact

must also be established by every individual person, which he can certainly establish at any time and in any place if this is his serious will and heartfelt desire.... Then he will noticeably feel My blessing, and he will feel urged to seek contact with his fellow human beings, precisely in order to discuss what moves him so strongly.... because My presence impels him to speak regardless of what happens, because spiritually striving people who are full of love for Me will always gather for spiritual exchanges. This promise of Mine should also encourage you to test the strength of My name, for if you have faith you will also know that you, in your contact with Me, will also have strength at your disposal which you can use again for the benefit of your fellow human beings.... As yet your faith is weak, but time and again I remind you humans of My Words, and if you think about them seriously you will give even more significance to this promise; you will know that I Myself can work through you if you allow My working through the strength of your faith. For where I Am present there are no limits to My power.... providing that you don't draw limits yourselves through your very weak faith. However, I will bless you so that your strength will grow stronger through these Words of Mine 'Where two or three are gathered together in My name, there Am I in the midst of them....' And where I Am My spirit can work and My love, wisdom and power can be revealed....

Amen

'I will pour out My spirit upon all flesh....'

B.D. No. 7501

January 17th 1960

If you are being addressed by Me, My spirit will descend upon you, My eternal Father-Spirit will make contact with the spiritual spark in you, which remains inseparably as one with Me and is merely an emanated spark which shall return to Me, which shall repeatedly unite itself with the Father-Spirit again. If you are being addressed by Me you will be imbued by the fire of My love, the spiritual spark in you will ignite and spring into action.... It comes alive in you according to its fundamental element. And then a spiritual exchange can take place, that is, spiritual insights can be conveyed to the person, for My spirit is all-knowing, there is nothing it does not know, nothing is unclear to it, it is as knowledgeable as I am and also emanates its knowledge as I do.... It is My spirit which is speaking to you, it is not a second part of Me, it is I Myself Who speaks Words of love and wisdom to you. For you are My once emanated strength of love, you are spirit of My spirit and therefore also always in contact with Me because the strength of love cannot separate itself from Me, only you, as created beings, can keep yourselves distant from Me.... but it is only a distance which exists in **your** consciousness which, however, on My part cannot remain like this forever, because your fundamental element is the same as I Am: strength of love will forever be in contact with the source of strength. And this contact becomes a reality when you hear Me, when My spirit descends into an open vessel and thus permeates the human being so that he will be able to hear My voice. Then the distance between the human being and Me will be repealed, he will have moved near to his God and Father again, he will let the spiritual spark in him become a flame and this will leap back again to the fire of the Eternal Love.... The tiny spark in the human being finds its path to Me, and the connection is also established by the **human being's** will, it exists forever and can never be broken. But it concerns the **conscious** contact.... This should be aspired to by the human being so that the distance will be repealed, a person should want to be in contact with Me which then enables the working of My spirit, then My spirit will be able to 'pour out upon all flesh....' And that will very evidently happen during the last days before the end: 'My spirit will pour upon all flesh, servants and handmaidens shall prophesy....' For people only rarely establish the connection with Me now, so that I must evidently manifest Myself through the spirit by choosing people for Myself who are not opposed to Me, who prepare themselves as a receiving vessel for My spirit so that I can pour My spirit into them and then speak through them to humanity for their benefit and spiritual advantage. It is necessary that I speak to you humans....

You should all listen to My voice, and you should all take stock of yourselves, consider My Words, live accordingly and thus prepare yourselves for the end which you cannot avoid because the time has come to an end. I pour out My spirit upon all flesh.... This has been announced to humanity in

advance, hence you should not find it difficult to believe in My working of this nature.... You should realise that the time I referred to is upon you, that I will speak to you through servants and handmaidens who, on My instructions, shall inform you through their prophetic spirit. For they will predict future events, they will remind you of My predictions and you will be unable to deny that My spirit will pour itself out again, that these proclaimers do not speak their own words but voice that which is revealed to them by My spirit. I need them as mediators who are to bring My Word to you humans in all purity and clarity again, I need them to speak on My behalf, because My Words are necessary to warn you of the dangers you are facing if you don't take stock of yourselves and change. For all you humans go on existing without love and thereby become slaves to My adversary.... You must change yourselves into love, then you will take the path to Me and be saved from the downfall. But you don't have much time left, consequently My voice sounds ever louder, and I speak to you ever more frequently through the mouth of My servants and prophets; I only ask of you to believe those who keep receiving the flow of My spirit because they shall speak on My instructions.... And you will not regret having complied with their admonitions by listening to them and by merely making an effort to live according to the Word which sounds to you from above through My servants, which is your Father's voice of eternity and shall also guide you back again to Me, from Whom you once came forth and distanced yourselves of your own free will.... Heed My Word from above and know that it is the working of My spirit, that I want to help you and therefore avail Myself of these servants and handmaidens by pouring out My spirit so that I can speak through them to all of you.... so that you will not approach your ruin when the time has been fulfilled....

Amen

John 14.... 'I will not leave you comfortless....'

B.D. No. 7702

September 17th 1960

I will not leave you comfortless.... I will look after you as a Father and provide you with the evidence of My Fatherly love.... It is not My will that you should go on living on earth without guidance, that you are defencelessly left to My adversary's mercy who will instantly approach you when he discovers that you are abandoned. I love you because you are My children who once emerged from Me and left the right path, albeit voluntarily, but I will nevertheless not withhold My love from them. And My Fatherly love will only endeavour that you return to your Father's house again.... For this reason I will assume your guidance, providing you do not obstinately oppose Me, that you willingly allow yourselves to be guided by Me. But in that case you will be under divine care and nothing can happen to you, you need not feel as orphans who are alone in the world and are therefore often in danger as well. It is My love that I gather My lambs so that they will not stray all over the place, that I coax and call them as a good Shepherd Who does not want to lose even one of his sheep. My sheep know the voice of their Shepherd, they follow Him and He will lead them home, He will protect His flock from the enemy, who approaches time and again in order to cause confusion and to scatter the little sheep wherever he can. Then My coaxing call will ring out because I won't abandon them to My enemy.... I will pursue those who have lost their way or are in danger of falling into the abyss.... For I do not want to lose any one of My sheep because I love them.... And thus no-one need be afraid of being abandoned, for I take care of everyone who suffers adversity, who is alone and depends on help.... I Am close to all who merely think of Me, who entrust themselves to Me in their distress.... And, like a good shepherd, I will treat all those who have distanced themselves from Me and who shall be guided back with coaxing calls of love to their origin.... 'I will not leave you comfortless....' This is My promise to you, and thus you can confidently count on My protection, you can always avail yourselves of My help, for you know that there is One Who wants to be and remain your Father for all eternity.... And you should entrust yourselves to this Father, regardless of what troubles you. Then He will take you by your hand and safely guide you through all difficulties, He will give you strength to surmount all obstacles, He will even out your paths so that you will safely reach your goal, so that you will find Me and stay with Me forever. For all of you are My children who once left the Father's house but who shall return again and can only achieve this with My help.... They need

not feel helpless, for as a loving Father I furnish My children with strength so that they will be able to travel the path to their true home.... so that they will return to Me, to their Father of eternity....

Amen

'The measure you use will be the measure you receive....'

B.D. No. 8786

March 21st 1964

And regardless of how impossible it seems to you, I will intervene (affect you extraordinarily) when the time is right, for nothing is impossible to Me.... Just try to raise your degree of love, make an effort to live in accordance with My will, take care of your fellow human being in his adversity and demonstrate your love for Me by seeing in your fellow human being your brother, who has also come forth from Me in order to inherit beatitude one day. Believe that love alone is enough in order to accomplish the greatest miracles, in order to make things happen which you would humanly find impossible. Yet I Am a God of love, wisdom and might.... I can do anything, but **at what time** My might will express itself is always determined by My love and wisdom. And truly, with your will, with your love you can determine My will and My love, you can apply coercion on Me which I will extremely gladly put up with, because love will never be a nuisance but always give pleasure....

And if you grant Me **your** love, My love will also express itself such that it will make you happy. I will give you humans the most diverse tasks, I know how and in which way every person can help, and I also know, whether and when he is willing to help, and I will send people his way whom he can please with his helpfulness, to whom he will give what they urgently require, be they earthly or spiritual possessions.... By passing on earthly possessions you are always demonstrating love to Me, for whatever you do to the least of My brothers you do unto Me.... Furthermore, you also prove to Me that you have already overcome matter and are spiritually progressing.... But if you pass on spiritual possessions then it is My work that I send people to you whom you should consider spiritually, whose souls are going hungry and are in urgent need of your help to nourish them, so that their souls will strengthen and recover. This helpfulness will be particularly rewarded by Me, for it signifies a distribution of spiritual possessions which will give life to the soul. And whoever is thus of service to Me by passing on what he receives from Me directly.... whoever has the salvation of his fellow human being's soul at heart, can be absolutely certain of My support, for he is implementing a labour of love which has to be far more highly valued, because he first has to feel sincere love for Me and for his fellow human being in order to acquire the possession of these spiritual values which he shall share again.... And then I will also always show Myself to him as a loving Father, I will guide him on earth and bless all his ways.... And My promises will fulfil themselves such that I will also work in an unusual way when the time is right.

All people in spiritual and earthly adversity are your neighbours, and you shall give to them what they require.... You should have the sincere will to help them and, truly, you will then also always have the means which you should pass on again, be they of a spiritual or material kind. Therefore, don't calculate anxiously but be generous, for the measure you use will be the measure you receive, what you give with love will be rewarded to you a thousand fold, always depending on the degree of love which impels you to help. So, don't worry, for I will take care of you.... always just work at improving yourselves, so that you will resist all temptations, so that you will not become heartless and put your degree of maturity at risk, and then you will also always be allowed to feel My love to an extent that you will feel My presence and be happy.... I love you, and I Am all-powerful, thus I **want** to make you happy and I Am also **able** to do so. However, My love knows **when** the time is right that I can affect you in an unusual way, that you will obviously experience My love and I can release you from all adversities of body and soul.... For My willingness to help is far greater than yours, and My gifts of grace are immeasurable, which I can and want to bestow on everyone who loves Me and keeps My commandments....

Amen

Jesus' references to the end time

Indications of natural event.... Jesus' reference on earth....

B.D. No. 2437

August 5th 1942

It is not coincidence that increased indications in nature suggest an eruption of the elements, for God sends these signs in advance in order to prepare people for an exceptional natural event which will suddenly and unexpectedly take people by surprise and result in inconceivable misery. People are meant to associate these indications with His Word, for Jesus Christ already mentioned this time when He lived on earth, because He wanted to point out to people the eventual consequences of their way of life. This time is now approaching; people should heed the signs which announce the event.... They should not ignore anything that deviates from the framework of natural law. God announces Himself, that is, His intervention in the existing world order, it is not His will that people should experience anything unprepared which should and can advance them spiritually if the correlation of all happenings is explained to them. For this reason God constantly refers to the forthcoming time and informs people that the time has come which necessitates divine intervention. Then it is left up to every individual person himself what he makes of this warning.... If he believes, he will adjust his life accordingly, he will make contact with God and humbly entrust his destiny to Him.... They will not be in as much danger as those people who lack all faith in an intervention. The latter will not prepare themselves either, instead, all references and admonitions will bypass their ears unheeded. And the natural event will be dreadful for them.

For profound faith gives a person the confidence that they are protected by God in every danger; yet an unbeliever will have nothing to hold on to if he does not recognise a Lord above Himself at the last minute and commends himself to His mercy. God sends His messengers long before the event already in order to stimulate humanity's thinking, and these indications can be recognised by everyone who wants to recognise them. They will give rise to thought because they don't just occur once but repeat themselves often and at regular intervals, so that they will have to be noticed by everyone. But every person usually devises his own explanation and this depending on his attitude towards God. As soon as he associates these phenomena with God's will, he pays attention to them and thereby benefits, since he prepares himself for the time ahead, which is of great advantage for his soul. What God has proclaimed in Word and Scripture will irrevocably come to pass, only the point in time is unknown to people.... For this reason they should pay attention to the signs which God had mentioned. And thus they will know that the earth will be facing severe tremors which will cause incredible suffering to the human race.... Then it is up to every person to shape himself such that he can brace himself for the coming time.... He should persevere and appeal for strong faith so as not to weaken in view of the work of destruction which is in store for humanity. And God will take care of every person who pays attention to His Word and consciously expects the divine intervention....

Amen

'They ate and drank....' just as it was before the Flood....

B.D. No. 4575

February 28th 1949

As the end comes closer it will become again as it was before the great flood. People will be seized by an increased lust for life and be influenced by the world with all its attractions. People will no longer be able nor want to control themselves and will therefore unscrupulously enjoy life in sinfulness. For they will not desire harmless pleasures, instead, sin will prevail everywhere, selfish love will displace all neighbourly love and thus people will become sinful by harming their fellow human beings merely to satisfy their body's every wish. Other people's possessions will not be

respected and thus all laws will be violated. The increased pleasure of life will stifle the voice of conscience and what the world has to offer will be relished to the full.... The world, however, is My adversary's realm and thus only bad can come from the world, it can only denote a danger for the soul, for the satisfaction granted to the body must be atoned for by the soul, it must pay for what the body demands. People may therefore seemingly delight in the pleasure, only those belonging to My Own will know which hour has struck when people seek to intoxicate themselves in the ecstasy of pleasure. Then the end will be very near, for I have long announced to you already that it will be like before the great flood.... They ate and drank, they married and were given in marriage and took no notice of the admonitions and warnings from above. And it will be difficult to preach the Gospel to these people, for since they only pay attention to and aim for earthly life they lack all understanding for spiritual life, and therefore they mock and ridicule every bearer of truth who will try to convert them. Yet in the midst of euphoria comes the last Judgment.... It will be dreadful for all who look upon the world as their God, for they will fall from the height into the abyss, from joy into immense fear, they will fall from heaven into hell.... For the world and its attractions was their heaven, but the world will be destroyed.... and harshest incarceration will be the fate of those who used their freedom on earth wrongly, who live in sin and also die in sin. Beware of the world for it is a great danger for you.... at the moment it certainly still offers much that is desirable yet it is better that you refrain from it and strive toward the heavenly joys which come afterwards, and do without, so that you can enjoy the delights of heaven in all abundance. Don't belong to those who only love themselves and want to provide the body with every pleasure. The euphoria is short-lived, yet it will be followed by a dreadful awakening, as it is announced in Word and Scripture.... The human race, however, is in great danger, for it is already dazzled by the world's deceptive light, and it will not stand still in its demands but it will increase them.... It aims with giant strides towards the final end.... it seeks life and will find death, it seeks joy and walks into ruin....

Amen

**'There shall not be left one stone upon another.... ' Great
adversity....**

B.D. No. 4639

May 14th 1949

A time will come when everything that was laboriously acquired and built up shall be lost; a time will come when people will realise that everything which was intended to provide them with physical prosperity is worthless and they will be completely destitute, because they lack spiritual wealth whose possession lets people get over the loss of earthly goods. I constantly draw your attention to this time for it will come to pass as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture.... not one stone will be left upon another.... The fact that such a dreadful work of destruction shall take place as an act of God might sound incomprehensible to worldly-minded people, nevertheless it is inevitable, firstly, because it is intended to have an educational purpose and then it is also designated in the eternal plan of Salvation to enable the spiritual substances at a lower stage of development to attain other forms. It is necessary for people to be extraordinarily severely affected for they pay almost no attention to their spiritual development anymore and shall be given final encouragements, although they can also ignore them if they are unwilling to change and to ascend. They can only be treated even more harshly for they are no longer open to gentle admonitions and everything which hitherto was inflicted upon humanity for this purpose remains unsuccessful. However, the forthcoming time will involve a drastic change, so that people's thoughts will automatically turn to the meaning and purpose of earthly life and nevertheless cause a change in a few people, which will be truly beneficial for them.

The adversity will be so severe that it will awaken the willingness to help in those who still have a spark of love in their heart, and this spark will find nourishment and grow into a flame, for anyone who only wants to help will also actively help and ease his neighbour's difficult fate, because he knows himself how much distress every individual person's fate is causing. And those who are willing to help will also be helped by Me, they will receive help as a sign of a higher Power where no way out can be found anymore, Which lovingly draws up close to people to reveal Itself to them. For earthly help often seems impossible but that which is impossible for people can still be accomplished by Me,

and thus even the greatest adversity is not hopeless because nothing is impossible for Me. And thus the love which is given to one's neighbour will bring forth good fruit, it will gain My love, and this signifies help and grace and an exceptional flow of strength, on account of which My Own need not lose heart, for they will not feel the adversity so much because they will be full of strength and always have Me by their side as a Helper Who, for the sake of their faith, will work evidently in order to still gain the few before the end who are weak in faith but nevertheless of good will.... They will receive strength and survive that time of need without damage to their soul. My Own, however, will be protected by Me and can anticipate this time without worry, for it will not last long....

Amen

'The powers of the heavens shall be shaken....' Reversal of natural laws.... Rapture....

B.D. No. 5029
December 28th 1950

The gift of grace from above is strength from heaven; it comes from the spiritual kingdom of light, from heaven, in contrast to the expressions of strength from below, which originate from hell. Beings from the kingdom of light thus become unusually active as soon as the pure Word of God can be conveyed to people by way of God-serving and helpful people's will on earth who are receptive to the transmission from the spiritual kingdom and who accept the spiritual gifts.... The powers of heaven are moving.... they will be exceptionally active during the last days before the end. This explanation must first be given concerning Jesus' Words about the signs of the end and His second coming. He made a powerful statement, for He announced changes which, according to His Words, signify a reversal of natural laws.... His Words always had a spiritual meaning, yet in the last days a second meaning will come to light apart from the spiritual meaning, for inconceivable natural phenomena will also take place, which the human being will be unable to explain by virtue of his intellect. They will run counter to divine natural law but are in principle only humanly unknown natural laws again, and these events are described by the Words 'The stars shall fall from heaven.... The sun shall be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light.... ' Scientists and the like will be unable to provide an explanation for this, they will be unable to throw light on the matter because their knowledge fails them where divine strength is at work. No-one will be able to fathom these natural laws because they only come into force at the end of a period of Salvation and the disintegration of physical external forms has become necessary. They are unnatural phenomena and yet intended in God's eternal plan, consequently part of His eternal natural law, which is completely incomprehensible to people who are as yet spiritually unenlightened.

Nothing is impossible to God.... hence He will always be able to be active and achieve everything, even outside of natural law; or else His omnipotence would be limited. Nevertheless, His activity always moves within divine order, for it is impossible for the human being as such to judge this; it would, however, be presumptuous to doubt it, because this would also doubt God's wisdom. And since God is Eternal Love Himself He will always implement His will such as it is necessary and good for His living creations, which He wants to gain for Himself. Things will happen before the end which you humans cannot possibly imagine as yet. And this can only be vaguely indicated to people with Words which announce unusual, indeed, almost incredible events. Even so, the Word of God is purest truth and will come to pass when the time is right. Then the strangest changes will occur in the cosmos, yet this present human race will only be able to observe them in the beginning; the end will not be experienced by them apart from a few who will be taken away and be able to watch the process of destruction of this earth and their inhabitants.... The old form and composition of earth will have ceased to exist, but the new earth will only shelter spiritually awakened people who will know the reasons for all events at the end of the earth, however, they will also know about God's power and glory, His greater than great love but also about His righteousness....

Amen

The time still granted to you until the end gets ever shorter according to My promise 'And except that those days should be shortened, there should be no flesh saved: but for the sake of My Own those days shall be shortened....' so that they will not be forced to go down on their knees before **him** who remains My enemy and opponent until the end. For he will still cause you serious problems and you will still need much strength in order to resist him. And yet you need not fear this time regardless of the menacing actions he will take against you. He will not reach his goal, for I will protect My Own from falling into his hands. However, they themselves will thank Me for every day without his influence, just as they will also be eternally grateful to Me once I put an end to his activity and put him into chains once again.... The time until the end will seem like a dream to you, that's how soon it will pass.... certainly often alarming yet then shadowy-like again because a host of spiritual beings of light will surround and protect you and direct everything in a way that it will be bearable for you. Nevertheless, great caution has to be taken for he is utterly evil-minded because the end is approaching. What you don't consider possible will still happen due to his influence, for many people in the world are willingly at his service and therefore will also turn against you due to his stimulus.

However, don't fear those who kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul.... Don't fear any danger at all because I Am with you and assure you My protection. And regardless of what will happen you will be able to endure because I will give you the strength, because I will make sure that it will not affect you too harshly, that you will persevere and emerge victoriously from the battle against him. But it will remain a battle, I keep telling you time and again so that you will not distance yourselves from Me but join Me ever more and in My proximity remain unassailable for the enemy. And anyone who joins Me so closely that he will always feel My presence need no longer fear anything, for due to the strength he receives from Me he will be superior to him.... The time is approaching the end.... And the days will fly by ever more rapidly, which you will also become ever more conscious of.... but then you will also know that you belong to My Own, for Whom I will shorten the days for your own sakes. Let yourselves be addressed by Me ever more frequently, don't become half-hearted and sluggish in your work for Me and My kingdom, for you will draw much strength from it, you will receive as you give, and a lot more spiritual nourishment needs to be given so that it will flow to everyone who desires it and accepts it through My Word. This is why you, My labourers in My vineyard on earth, should be constantly working and always know that not much time will be left.... You should take the Words seriously 'I will shorten the days for the sake of My elect....' The end will arrive sooner than you think, and you should all fortify yourselves for the time prior to it and commend yourselves to Me and My protection. And the end will come like a thief in the night.... and I will fetch those whom I do not find asleep away from Satan's place, and all their suffering will be over for them....

Amen

Jesus' last supper

'Take this and eat....'

B.D. No. 6135

December 14th 1954

Take this and eat.... these were My Words to My disciples when I gave them the bread as a symbol of the heavenly bread, My Word, which, having become flesh, was in the midst of them on earth.... Take this and drink.... I said when I gave them the wine.... which, like My blood.... the strength of My Word.... was to strengthen them.... Bread and wine were symbols for flesh and blood.... and since I Myself Am the Word that became flesh I was entitled to say: This is My body, which is given for to you.... this is My blood, which is shed **for you**.... For only through My death did I make it possible for you to hear My Word in you.... through My death I burst the chains which kept you in darkness....

Do understand, you must hear **My Word** if you want to become blessed.... And My Word must be hungrily received by you, you must eat it and provide your soul with nourishment so that it can live.... for My Word contains the strength which gives life to the soul.... Flesh and blood belong to life, and I died for **you** so that **you** will have life.... The bread of life is My Word.... I Myself Am the Word.... and the Word became flesh.... Can there be a more understandable explanation for the Supper I took with My disciples.... And each time you receive My Word and hungrily absorb it you will remember Me.... You cannot receive My Word other than in remembrance of Me because the One Who speaks to you cannot be forgotten as long as you listen to Him....

When I broke the bread for My disciples, when I passed the wine to them, I knew that only My Word would establish the connection between Me and people and give evidence of it.... I knew that they would only be able to reach the goal if they constantly allowed Me to speak to them.... Furthermore, I knew that they had to believe in My act of Salvation, I knew what was ahead of Me, that I had to sacrifice My life for humanity in order to redeem it and, in view of this, I said the Words 'which is given for you.... which is shed for you....' The eternal Word Itself spoke to people: Take this and eat.... take this and drink.... You humans must establish heartfelt contact with Me in order to hear My speech, in order to be nourished by Me with the bread of heaven.... in order to take Supper with Me.... And you can only establish this sincere contact with Me again through loving activity.... Only then will you accept Me Myself in you, then you will be permeated by the strength of My love.... My blood guarantees you life.... Then I will give abundantly, your soul will never again suffer hunger and thirst, for I Myself will nourish it and quench its thirst.... I Myself will offer it communion.... I will break the bread and give wine to all those who want to receive, and they will enjoy My flesh and My blood and their souls will live forever....

Amen

Last Supper – Communion – Love....

B.D. No. 7120

May 14th 1958

There can be no union with Me without love, because love is My fundamental nature and only the same can join Me, hence the person who wants to join Me must also have a loving heart.... Otherwise such a bond is impossible.... Therefore you should also be able to understand the events of the Last Supper, which can only bring about your unity with Me if love has been kindled in you.... for only then will My presence in you be possible. So what use are external practices as long as you ignore what is most important practising love.... 'He who remains in love remains in Me and I in him....' Hence you know the condition for My presence and cannot expect Me to divert from this

condition if you merely perform external action which you devised yourselves because you failed to understand the spiritual meaning of My Words 'Do this in remembrance of Me....' A life of love is the prerequisite to receive Me Myself in your heart and My disciples, with whom I took Supper, lived such a life of love.... Consequently, they also understood My Words with which I simultaneously appointed them to their teaching ministry.... For they were meant to distribute the bread of life which they had received from Me when I handed to them the earthly bread.... They were meant to offer the living water to their brothers, just as I passed to them the cup of wine.... And since I Myself was the 'Word that became flesh' I gave Myself to those who partook at the Supper and I will always give Myself to all those who want to receive Me, I will likewise nourish them with the bread of life and give them living water to drink, they will 'eat My flesh and drink My blood', thus I Myself will be present to them, as I have promised. However, without love such Communion is impossible.... I can certainly preach love to all people, I can help them to perform loving actions but I can never take abode in a heart which has not shaped itself into love as yet.... And now consider how many people have a completely wrong idea, who certainly take the path to the 'table of the Lord' in their own opinion, but who lack the right kind of love and whose hearts are therefore incapable of receiving Me.... Consider how many people hold on to this wrong concept because they believe themselves to have done their duty and therefore don't strive spiritually either, even though everyone knows that I Myself Am love and that I only expect you to fulfil the commandments of love in order to be able to delight you with My presence. But 'My Word' is not as much observed as the compliance of external formalities, and My Word alone could already make those people think that I require **more** than mere formal engagements.... The instituted Words which I spoke to My disciples were understood spiritually by them. But people would also be able to understand their spiritual meaning if only they thought about them seriously. But then the understanding would also require them to live **a life of love** and thus their work of improving themselves, which most people are unwilling to do. On the other hand, the many different formalities do not require this self-denial and are therefore eagerly carried out, and yet, they do no benefit the souls, instead, they only make them half-hearted and careless regarding their task in earthly life which consists of educating themselves to live in love, since this is the prerequisite for entering into a close union with Me, which makes My **presence** in the human heart **possible** in the first place. For union with Me is the human being's first and last goal which he should and can attain on earth if only he makes an effort to live a life of love and thus tries to adapt his nature to My fundamental nature which is Love in itself....

Amen

Instituted Words....

B.D. No. 7666

August 5th 1960

It will always be beneficial for you when you are touched by My flow of grace, for nothing flowing forth from Me remains ineffective if it is willingly accepted. And a willing acceptance is guaranteed when you turn to Me in prayer, when you desire to be blessed by Me.... when you desire My Words. And thus it is My will that you learn how I want you to understand My Word, 'Do this in remembrance of Me....' For you derived from this a practice in which you literally hand out bread and wine and by eating this bread and drinking the wine you are convinced of having accepted Me Myself in you.... But the **correct** meaning of My Words has not been understood by you. Yet precisely the acceptance of 'bread and wine' is very important, but I want **My Word** with its **strength** to be understood by this. You cannot become blessed if you don't listen to My Word, the bread of life, the manna which comes from heaven.... You must let yourselves be addressed by Me, **I Myself Am** the Word Which became **flesh** for you humans.... When I lived on earth I distributed the bread of life open-handedly; I spoke to all people and nourished the souls of those who were of good will.... I gave them bread and wine, My Word which I had blessed with My strength.... I educated My disciples into becoming true proclaimers of My Word because they were intended to spread My Word across the world.... for all people need food for their souls, all people were meant to 'eat My flesh and drink My blood', My Word was to be made accessible to all people in the same way as it had come forth from Me Myself; they should

receive purest truth, which only the Eternal Truth Itself was able to provide. However, My life on earth only lasted for a short time. And during this time I prepared My disciples for their teaching ministry.... And when the hour of My leaving approached, when I took Supper with My disciples before My arduous path to Golgotha.... I assigned them to their task.... I pointed out their mission to inform the world about Me, My teaching and also about that which was still ahead of Me and therefore said the Words, 'Go ye into all the world....', I broke the bread and passed it to them as well as the cup with the wine.... and My disciples knew that I termed the bread and the wine as 'flesh and blood, that I spoke to them figuratively and they understood that I expected them to take **My Word** to people, so that they would remember Me and never ever forget Me again. They knew that they were meant to distribute to their fellow human beings in the same way as I had distributed the bread and the wine to them.... And thus I undoubtedly inaugurated My disciples into the ministry for which I had educated them....

However, at no time ever did I institute **such** a communion service as you humans have assumed from My Words. It had never been My will that you humans should perform an act and in so doing expect a result which, however, requires **other** prerequisites than merely the acceptance of bread and wine.... Understand that it was the instruction for My disciples to go into the world and to spread the Gospel.... To proclaim My Word to people which, in truth, is My flesh and My blood, the bread from the heavens, and which is and will remain indispensable for people who try to find union with Me and who will also have found it when I can speak to them directly, when My strength can pour directly into them and thus result in the unification which is the purpose and goal of life on earth. But the **first** condition is that the human being shapes himself into love, for he cannot accept **Me Myself**.... My Word, My flesh and My blood.... if he lacks love.... I Myself **Am Love**. I can only unite with love again. Hence it is **not possible** for Me to enter the heart of a person who carries out the external act, who digests the bread and wine but whose heart is utterly devoid of love.... For I do not understand 'love' as an emotional response which confronts Me at that instant, instead, I understand it as a quelled selfish love which expresses itself in neighbourly love, and which therefore also testifies to love for Me. This is a true union with Me in which I can speak to him, in which he is offered My flesh and My blood, My Word with its strength. Then the human being will constantly keep Me in mind, he will start and end everything with Me, he will always endeavour to live according to My will and take the path of higher development.... he will reach the goal, he will attain eternal life and beatitude....

Amen

Do this in remembrance of Me....' Last Supper...

B.D. No. 3740

April 10th 1946

Strength, wisdom and life originate from Me.... And thus I have to be recognised as the source of strength and light, and the connection with Me has to be sought in order to attain life through the receipt of strength and light. Hence I must be able to find Myself again in you, that is, light and strength or the knowledge of eternal truth and its subsequent abundant strength have to be in you.... My spirit must take effect in you.... and thus I Myself must be able to work in you, only then will you be alive, but you will never ever loose this life again. Then you will be united with Me, and this union is the true Communion.... The union with Me is indispensable or you could neither receive strength nor light, since the unification with the eternal primary source has to take place first if the flow of My love is to be transmitted across into the human being's heart.

But in order to establish this unification the will to receive something from Me is required first. The will, in turn, necessitates mental activity, thus I have to be recognised by the person's heart and intellect as the source and therefore the provider of what he desires, and he has to mentally endeavour to reach Me.... Only this activates the will and fulfils the conditions which lead to unification with Me. The activated will is equal to an act of love.... But this is essential, and thus My commandment of love can never be bypassed by those who truly want to communicate with Me, who want to unite with Me....

Distribute gifts, offer food and drink to your neighbour, help him in his spiritual and earthly hardship, give to him as I have given to you, refresh your fellow human being's body and soul, have mercy on the weak and sick, comfort the sad, lift up the discouraged, always and ever alleviate hardship, and always do so with regard to Me Who exemplified the earthly path to you.... Share everything you own with the poor.... Then you will fulfil My commandment of love and thereby the first condition of unification with Me, for **only** when you have shaped your heart to love will I be able to unite with you, otherwise a union with Me will be impossible, regardless of how many external formalities you observe which have no effect on the state of your heart (your soul).

I want to give you life, give you strength and light in abundance, yet this will never be possible as long as you don't activate your will, as long as you don't practise love.... But I instructed you Myself on how you should practise this love and constantly admonished you to follow Me.... Remember Me and My teaching, then you will conduct yourselves accordingly, and you will truly become vessels for My spirit, thus you will enable the part of Myself to take effect in you.... You will draw Me to yourselves through your actions of love, and thus you will unite yourselves with Me, the primary source of strength and eternal light, and therefore you can also receive unlimited light and strength.... knowledge and might....

The union with Me has to be accomplished first through actions of love, only then can I be present in you Myself.... even in spirit, and only then can I nourish and refresh you with spiritual sustenance, with flesh and blood, with My body in the spiritual sense.... For I Myself Am the Word, thus I offer you the Last Supper when I convey My Word to you, which is spiritual nourishment for your soul. You can indeed also accept this nourishment without prior activity of love, but then it is not a Communion, not a union with Me, for then it is not yet the Last Supper, but it can lead you to it if you don't just accept the Word with your ears but also with your hearts and live accordingly.... Only the activity of your will, the action of love, establishes the spiritual union with Me. However, these activities of love consist of giving, of constantly passing on and sharing what you own, of what makes you happy yourselves in order to also please your fellow human being who is in need of it. And if you don't practise this, if you don't try to follow Me in this, you cannot be nourished at My table either, you will not be able to take the Last Supper with Me, because you exclude yourselves as My guests, because then I will remain inaccessible to you until you have changed yourselves to love, which is and eternally will be My fundamental substance.

If you accept the Last Supper in the form chosen by you humans it will always just remain an external act which only has a profound spiritual meaning when your heart is filled by deep love which, however, should not just move you emotionally but has to find its expression in works of unselfish neighbourly love. For whoever remains in love remains in Me and I in him.... This Word of Mine is also the foundation of the Last Supper set up by Me.... You should always bear My way of life on earth in mind and follow My every example.... And as you give you shall receive, spiritually and earthly; you will, providing you are in close unity with Me through love, be nourished and strengthened at all times.

Constantly carrying out works of love in remembrance of Me.... and thereby establishing the certain union with Me, which guarantees you the receipt of My Word, of My flesh and blood.... that is the profound spiritual meaning of the words 'Do this in remembrance of Me....' which all of you will certainly understand if you have the sincere determination to ascertain the spiritual meaning of My Words....

Amen

Jesus' fears and the disciples' doubts

Jesus had prior knowledge of His act....

B.D. No. 6088

October 24th 1954

I wanted to suffer on your behalf and therefore consciously prepared Myself for dying on the cross.... I was aware of the exceedingly arduous path of suffering I had to take in order to redeem you from adversity and death.... I foresaw everything, nothing I had to endure was hidden from Me, and yet, I walked towards it.... I did not defend Myself, I did not escape the danger but consciously approached it. I not only foresaw the sequence of My act of Salvation, I foresaw the weakness and bondage which kept My living creations down in immense adversity and to whom I could only bring deliverance through My suffering and death on the cross....

Everything stood brightly and clearly before My spiritual eye, the brutal power of My adversary, the fallen beings' abysmal distance from God which constantly increased.... I saw pitch-black darkness on one side and brightest light and happiness on the other.... I had come from the light and also wanted to carry it into the darkness, yet this necessitated a bridge, I had to offer something in exchange in order to be entitled to lift the tormented souls out of the abyss into the light.... I had to use **My** life in order to buy life for the wretched creatures. The path of self-sacrifice was the only option.... the sacrifice of the highest good I possessed.... My life, for the sake of love for those who were dead as the consequence of sin. I had to pay for their life with **My life**....

Everything stood brightly and clearly before My eyes, for this reason I already suffered dreadfully before, because, being human, I was created with the same emotions as you.... with the **fear** of death, of the appalling suffering and of Myself, that I might get exhausted, that My strength might not be enough and that My fallen brothers would have to remain in the great adversity were I to fail....

However, the nearer the day of the happening came the more My strength grew.... My strength grew like My love for the wretched human race, whose hardship I recognised every day more.... And even though I was sporadically seized by weakness in view of what was ahead of Me, My will nevertheless did not weaken to finish the work which I had started.... For the human part of Me kept in contact with the Father at all times, Who permeated Me with strength so that My love became increasingly more powerful and I finally died fully consciously, because I also realised that **death** had to be overcome and that this was My task as well....

The path to the cross was bitter and excruciating, for I had to go through profound darkness in order to open the gate into the kingdom of light for all those who wanted to ascend from the abyss into the light.... However, as a human being I had to endure the most bitter suffering and torment in order to help **you**, who, without My act of Salvation, without My death on the cross, would have been irretrievably lost.... This is why My earthly existence as a human was so tremendously sorrowful, for from the moment the Father had revealed Himself in My physical shell I was also aware of everything that awaited Me, and yet I voluntarily walked the path to the cross, for not the Father's will but My love for the fallen beings impelled Me to accomplish the act of Salvation, and this love gave Me the strength to persevere until the hour of death....

Amen

I, too, found life on earth as a human being difficult at times, for I was subject to the same laws as you are, I had to fight against the same weaknesses and temptations, and it was not always easy to face up to them even though My heart was full of love and was therefore permeated by divine strength when I needed it. But hours of psychological distress were also part of My journey through life and had I not experienced it like you, I would not have been as 'human' as you either.... My soul had to go through the process of spiritualisation on earth which led to My complete unification with the Father, the complete becoming as One with Him. Although My soul had indeed come from above, it nevertheless had come into flesh with all its immature substances which every material shell basically consists of, and all these substances had to spiritualise themselves, for the body with all its wishes and cravings exerted an extraordinary influence on the soul which was unable to ignore these temptations but had to bear up against them.... just as is the task of the human soul who wants to take the path of following Jesus in order to release themselves from sin and death. However, the battles I had to go through were difficult and My earthly progress often weighed Me down like an overwhelming burden which wanted to make Me doubt that I would ever be able to travel this path until the end. Time and again I drew strength from love.... For by virtue of My love and its consequences I also foresaw the difficult path I had to take, I foresaw the suffering and death on the cross as well as the people's spiritual state who nailed Me on the cross.... And yet I had to continue My path until the end.... Time and again I had to endeavour to master My fears and weaknesses and cling to the Father to strengthen Me in every adversity of body and soul, for I experienced all these tribulations like you and even far more severely, because My life surrounded by sinful humanity was already a torture for Me, Who lived in all purity in the midst of those for whom I wanted to suffer and die.

However, the more My body matured, the deeper became My soul's union with the Father Who was in Me, and the clearer became My mission, which I indeed began as a 'human being' but concluded as 'God' and which I was able to accomplish because the strength in Me grew constantly, just as the love for the unhappy human race became greater the nearer I got to the end. And **Love was** the strength which made Me accomplish the act of Salvation; Love was the Father in Me Whose will I wanted to fulfil in order to help My fallen brothers. I consciously travelled My earthly path, at first I only had vague ideas and every now and then bright thoughts and insights; yet the more the spiritualisation progressed in Me the clearer I saw the plan of Salvation on account of which I had descended from the kingdom of light to Earth. But as long as human substances were still clinging to My body I also had to endure human suffering and torments which, last but not least, also included the inner distress of not being able to cope with My task.... for I knew what it would mean were I to fail in the battle against the one who was, is and will remain everyone's enemy for eternities to come. Yet I gained victory over him, I took on the battle with incredible pain and suffering and constantly gained more strength because My love for you also kept growing since you must suffer until you are released from him and his power. My strength grew as My love intensified.... And so you humans know that you can only draw the strength for your earthly task from love, for My adversary will always try to weaken you by driving you into unkindness, by wanting to prevent you by any means to carry out an act of love in order to keep you weak.... But then remember that I, too, have struggled against him, and that he also tried to weaken Me through trepidations and anxious questioning of whether I would have the strength for My mission. Then turn to Me for help and appeal to Me for strength against the enemy of your soul and for every battle in life, be it of an earthly or spiritual nature.... And you will not ask in vain, for I will truly grant everyone's prayer who calls to Me in his distress....

Amen

My Own left Me when I was taken to the place of execution, because their faith in My divinity, in My power and strength had gone and they regarded Me as a weak person under the control of the henchmen.... This was the strongest test of faith imposed upon My Own and they failed, for not one of them recognised My real mission properly nor understood the events which necessarily had to follow if were I to complete My mission. But this difficult test was unavoidable so that My Own would believe even more firmly when I appeared to them after My resurrection. They were still so under the spell of My miraculous works that they were unable to grasp that I weakly handed Myself over to My enemies without resisting; they could not understand that I did not avail Myself of My strength and power and thus they seriously began to doubt Me, even though it didn't have to be a permanent state. But I wanted them to quickly gain a strong faith again; I did not want them to remain in their state of doubt for long as it caused them much psychological misery and I felt sorry for them in their distress. Hence they needed to be extraordinarily strengthened, which could only happen by appearing to them again and personally providing them with the comfort and strength they required. This is how weak people are as long as they are still subject to My adversary's power, for My disciples had much knowledge, they had always been in My presence and received so much evidence of My divinity that they truly should no longer have doubted.... And yet they failed because they were not entirely redeemed until My appearance, which subsequently gave them an abundance of light and permanently released them from My adversary's shackle, who still tried to make use of their last disbelief and caused tremendous anxiety in My Own.... However, My appearance released them from him for good.... I had conquered death and thus was also able to give My Own true life after My resurrection. And so, every person's weak faith is a sign that My adversary still intervenes and that it is necessary for Me to come to every individual person of little faith.... therefore you should open the door of your heart for Me so that I can enter when your soul is frightened and urgently needs comfort and strength.... Then you should always look towards the cross, direct your eyes to Me, your divine Redeemer Jesus Christ and open the door for Me, and you will truly receive comfort and strength, for I want to strengthen the faith of everyone who is still weak and doubtful that I Am the best and kindest Father Who wants to snatch you from the adversary's hand, just like I appeared to My disciples, in order to fortify your faith in My power and strength and glory, which will never ever perish....

Amen

Jesus' path of suffering and death on the cross

Good Friday.... The path to Golgotha....

B.D. No. 5643

April 3rd 1953

The path to Golgotha was the conclusion of My earthly life, it was the victory and the accomplishment.... it was the harshest and most bitter self-sacrifice, for every individual detail until the hour of My death was clearly in My mind's eye. I knew about all the suffering and pain and nevertheless walked this path consciously. Yet I also saw the tremendous adversity of the sinful human race, the inconceivable guilt of sin and its ramifications laid like an accumulated burden upon My shoulders and I knew, were I to shake this burden off.... which was certainly within My power and strength.... humanity would break down under it and would never be able to deal with the burden alone.... I knew that this burden of sin would torture the human race for eternities and would never allow it to attain freedom and bliss.... I saw these agonies of the whole of humanity before My spiritual eye and I took pity upon the wretched souls. For this reason I relieved the human race from its burden of sin and walked the path to Golgotha, I took the indescribable suffering upon Myself in order to atone the guilt, which was so immense that only superhuman suffering would be suitable as an act of atonement. Therefore, I wanted to suffer and die for humanity and by no means lessen My suffering.... You humans will never be able to estimate the magnitude of My act of compassion, for you, who believe in Me, are also aware of My divine nature which could have lessened even the greatest suffering....

But I lived and died as a human being.... I was subjected to every agony a human being was able to endure, psychologically and physically I was terribly maltreated, My tormentors not only tortured My body but also uttered such appalling and hateful words that My soul recognised them as expressions of hell and felt insufferably tormented.... I have endured every imaginable suffering all for the love of people who would have had to atone for their huge guilt of sin themselves and would have taken eternities to do so.... As Jesus, the man, I was able to assess these people's inconceivable suffering and wanted to avert it by enduring what I was capable of enduring.... My love could not ignore humanity's immense adversity, it wanted to help, it wanted to redeem all enslaved people, it wanted to plead for forgiveness of all sins, it wanted to make

Amends and therefore sacrifice itself to the heavenly Father.... However, people must acknowledge the sacrifice made and allow themselves to be redeemed by Me. For this reason I call to you with most ardent love: Don't let Me have made this sacrifice for you in vain.... Recognise that you are weighed down by a huge burden of sin and let it be your will to be released from it. Accept My sacrifice on the cross as being offered up on your behalf, place yourselves under the Calvary cross, don't let My suffering and My death on the cross remain ineffective for you.... Bring all your sins to Me so that I will be able to release you, so that you may be forgiven, so that the Father will accept you for the sake of His Son's love.... let yourselves be redeemed through My blood which I shed on the cross for you humans....

Amen

Suffering and dying....

B.D. No. 6233

April 9th 1955

My suffering and death on the cross could not be avoided, I had to empty the cup completely, I had to take everything upon Myself if the act of Salvation for you humans, to redeem you from all guilt, was to be accomplished.... Only the knowledge of your pitiful state persuaded Me to make

this self-sacrifice because My heart was filled with love for you.... and this love wanted to prevent the appalling fate which awaited you after the death of your body.... Because I knew of this appalling fate, since My eyes could witness the blissfulness of the kingdom of light as well as the suffering and torment in the realm of darkness, and since My love was for you as My fallen brothers I searched for a solution to avert your dreadful fate.... I accepted all the guilt Myself and carried it on the path to the cross....

Whatever had been physically done to Me was more than less just a symbol of what the entire burden of sin meant to Me, an immensely arduous, painful and suppressing burden, which made Me fall time and again and which I nevertheless carried with utmost love.... I took upon Myself all the pain My body could endure, for I carried the burden of sin on your behalf, I wanted to accomplish the atonement which you irrevocably would have had to make.... which you would have been eternally unable to do.... I suffered and fought, I truly sweated blood, I looked into all pits of hell, and fear and horror tore My soul apart.... I endured everything you would have had to endure yourselves.... And My love for you gave Me the strength to endure until the hour of death.

There is no comparison for My torment, no human being could have suffered to this extent.... But I had offered Myself voluntarily because I knew that only in this way could you be released from Satan's chains.... I already **knew** in advance what to expect and carried this burden around with Me too, I consciously took the path which would finally lead to the cross, but I suffered terribly because of My knowledge and therefore could never be joyful amongst My Own.... I saw the tragedy imposed on the souls, I saw the futility of their earthly life if I had failed and **not** brought them salvation from sin and death....

And this knowledge strengthened My will so that I accepted My fate without resistance, which was the purpose and objective of My life on earth.... But right up to the end I had to make a great effort, right up to the end the burden on Me had increased so tremendously that I could feel My strength diminishing and thus I called as a human being to God, to let the cup pass Me by.... But the strength of My love was stronger than My human weakness.... And the day of My indescribable suffering and My death on the cross became the day of Salvation from all guilt for you humans.... And the knowledge of this enabled Me to patiently accept everything so that I could finally call out 'It is finished....' And My soul could return from whence it had come, since through My death the complete unification with My Father, from Whom I too had once emerged, took place....

Amen

Jesus' free will as a human being....

B.D. No. 7992

September 15th 1961

Until the end My suffering and dying on the cross also remained a matter of free will, since I truly could have prevented it by making use of God's indwelling strength and resisting all enemies who wanted to implement their thoughts of hatred of Me.... I accomplished the act entirely of My own free will; I was willing to suffer and die for My fellow human beings because, as 'Jesus, the human being', I knew that the whole of the human race was in an appalling state of wretchedness due to the past original sin, and because My love wanted to help all My fallen brothers I had offered Myself to the Father as a sacrifice of atonement.... I was by no means forced to do so, the Father in Me did not dictate My will, I acted completely freely of My own accord.... And I found it incredibly difficult because I foresaw everything that would happen until the act of Salvation had been completely accomplished.... I, as a human being, struggled and prayed in profound distress to the Father that He should remove the cup from Me.... and I was strengthened and completely gave Myself to the Father. For the love in Me was overwhelmingly powerful, thus the Eternal Love Itself was indeed within Me and I allowed Myself to be determined by **It**, which would have been impossible had My human will resisted. Love impelled Me toward the wretched human race and I wanted to help people, and this love made Me accept an extent of suffering which you humans are incapable of assessing. Yet the guilt you had burdened yourselves with as a result of your apostasy from God was also inconceivable. And,

in order to atone for this guilt, I had to suffer enormously as a human being and endure the agony of the crucifixion. Love, however, is strength and therefore I persevered until the end, or the suffering itself would truly have been enough to kill My body prematurely had the strength of love not enabled My body to accept the death on the cross and to persevere until the work was accomplished.... until the redemption from sin and death had been guaranteed for all people who accept My sacrifice on the cross and want to find redemption. So once again it depends on the person's free will as to how he relates to Me and My act of Salvation. For every being had turned away from Me of its own free will, and of its own free will it must turn back to Me again which happens when, as a human being, it acknowledges Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation, when it recognises Me Myself in Jesus and voluntarily hands itself and its guilt over to Me.... when it appeals for forgiveness and wants to return to Me again, Whom it once voluntarily left. Then the human being will consciously avail himself of the blessings of My act of Salvation, his weakened will shall receive strength and his return into his Father's house will be assured.

The inconceivable suffering I took upon Myself as a human being was still in no proportion to the immense guilt of the fallen spirits, but since Jesus, the human being, was full of love and volunteered the hardest sacrifice by relinquishing His life on the cross, I was satisfied with this sacrifice and redeemed all guilt for the sake of Jesus' great love, Who wanted to bring His fallen brothers back to Me again.... This was sufficient for Me, and thus My justice was also satisfied.... for I was unable to redeem any guilt which would have remained **without** atonement. Hence the act of Salvation had to be voluntarily accomplished. I did not allow any being to be forced into rendering this atonement.... And since the immense sin of the apostasy from Me had been a violation of My **love**, the act of atonement had to be an **act of love** again, for only love could redeem this immense guilt.... This love dwelled within Jesus, the human being. He was so receptive to it that He was completely imbued with love, which subsequently enabled Him to achieve His act of Salvation.... **Love** redeemed the sin.... **Love** completely permeated a human being.... **I Myself Am Love**, and thus I Myself was in Jesus, the human being, I Myself suffered and died for the human race. However, since I was unable to suffer as God, the 'human being Jesus' took all suffering upon Himself. Yet He did everything of His own free will, for although love does not compel, it willingly makes the greatest sacrifices.... And love achieves everything; it is a powerful strength which can endure even the most appalling affliction. I Myself, the Eternal Love, imbued Jesus, the human being, and thus I Myself was effective in Him and brought people redemption from sin and death....

Amen

Christ's suffering....

B.D. No. 5092

March 23rd 1951

Christ's suffering on the cross cannot even be remotely made understandable to people on earth, since in their imperfect state they cannot comprehend what it means for a perfect human being to fall victim to sin, for people's iniquity effectively triumphed over Him Who had not caused them harm. The spawns of hell made the enlightened soul of Jesus, the man, tremble, yet it did not defend itself.... It endured everything; nevertheless it was horror-stricken by so much dirt and evilness from people. It suffered indescribably, even far more than the body, by what it had to endure. The soul was surrounded by darkness and its light was unable to bear darkness; all the same, it did not flee because it wanted to drain the cup to the dregs in order to redeem humanity. It gave up its light, because otherwise that which the love of Jesus, the man, wanted to happen to it in order to offer God a sacrifice for humanity's sins could not have taken place. Thus it allowed its light to become ineffective and found itself in the midst of darkness which tormented and frightened it tremendously and increased its suffering a thousand fold, for the suffering of the soul exceeded the physical pain, which can only be understood by a perfect human being. Jesus, however, was as perfect as His Father in heaven is perfect.... and yet it was still on earth in the midst of sin.... His kingdom was the kingdom of light, the earth was Satan's kingdom, and in this kingdom the soul of light allowed itself to be violated. And the purest and most translucent Being Which ever lived on earth was horrified. It had to allow

itself to be touched by hands it detested, because they extended from hell and took hold of it, it had to hear intensely hurtful words; it was effectively detached from its world and totally at the mercy of darkness, which had certainly been its own will for eternity in order to achieve the act of Salvation, yet it was nevertheless no less horrendous, for it was being terrified and tortured to the point of exhaustion.... This is why Jesus exclaimed: 'My God, my God, why have You forsaken me....' At this moment in time it no longer remembered its mission, it only felt the separation from God, from light, for Whom it longed and for Whom it called in its distress.... It was the cruellest thing ever experienced by a person on earth, because He not only had to endure the body's suffering but also because the soul had suffered considerably more still, which humanity cannot understand. For this reason no human being, regardless of how much he would have to suffer, will be able to reach the extent to which Jesus the man had to endure, Who already knew about it long in advance and in His human nature prayed: Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but Thine, be done....' It was also the will of His soul, which had completely subordinated itself to God, to accomplish the act of Salvation and it accepted its fate, for its love for the suffering human race was greater than great, but likewise the guilt of sin was so immense that only the most extreme pain and suffering could count as a sacrifice of atonement, which therefore was carried out by Jesus the human being. Yet the depth of suffering was as immeasurable as His love, which made Him take all suffering of body and soul upon Himself in order to redeem humanity from eternal death....

Amen

Good Friday....

B.D. No. 7083

April 4th 1958

You should always remember My infinite love which motivated Me to accomplish the act of Salvation for you.... Whatever the man Jesus had experienced and endured on earth He had accepted because of His love for His fellow human beings whom He knew were suffering grave spiritual poverty. Even as a man He already knew of humanity's immense guilt of sin and the hopelessness of releasing itself without help. This knowledge was the result of His life of love, and thus He took pity on humanity and wanted to help. However, as a result of His love He also realised that He had to fulfil a mission.... that I Myself had sent Him to earth to serve Me as a vessel, and thus I Myself could accomplish the act of Salvation in Him for the redemption of the said immense guilt of sin.... And in accordance with this mission His life on earth progressed.... a life of untold difficulties and pain which first had to mature Him and which His soul experienced simply because of His association with sinful people, because His soul had descended from the kingdom of light into darkness.

But first the earthly shell which enclosed the soul had to be purged by these pains and difficulties, by always resisting the lusts and passions which adhered to it in order to become a worthy receptacle for Me Myself, but Who then completely and utterly permeated Him and thus became as one with Him.... And now His real mission began: to bring light to the people, to proclaim the truth to them, to preach the Gospel of love and thus to show and exemplify the path which they had to take as well if they wanted to enter the kingdom of light and bliss after their death.... in order to finally conclude His earthly path with an incomparable act of mercy.... with His most bitter suffering and the excruciating death on the cross as sacrifice for humanity's guilt of sin.... And this mission was indeed accomplished by a human being but I Myself was in this human being, I Myself, Eternal Love, accomplished the act of Salvation, because only love was able to make such a sacrifice, only love could suffer the torments of the cross, and only love could find the strength to patiently endure in complete consciousness until His death.... And although the man Jesus exclaimed on the cross the words 'My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me....' it was, after all, only a declaration that the Deity within Him did not compel Him to His action but that the human being Jesus voluntarily offered the sacrifice on behalf of His fellow human beings, that the love within Him motivated Him to continue but that It did not inhibit His freedom of thought and action. Jesus, the man, took humanity's entire burden of sin on His shoulders and walked with it to the cross....

Not one of you can understand the full meaning of these Words.... Although I Myself accomplished the act of mercy, because without love the man Jesus would not have been able to take the extent of pain and suffering upon Himself.... yet at the same time the 'Deity' could not suffer and thus the level of pain and suffering had to be endured by a soul capable of suffering, by a human being Whose body was sensitive to pain and Who thus made

Amends in this way for what had caused the whole of humanity to become guilty before God. And His soul also suffered beyond words since it came from the kingdom of light and experienced the darkness on earth as indescribable torture.... The man Jesus was 'My Son, in Whom I was well pleased....' He was devoted to Me in every sense, with all His love, He lived amongst sinful people and His soul ceaselessly searched for Me, His God and Father of eternity, His love forced Me to flow into Him incessantly, and thus unification between human and God could take place, i.e. 'God's human manifestation' could proceed in absolute lawful order. For I could never have chosen to take abode in a human shell which was not pure love because I Myself cannot unite with something impure....

And every immature substance became spiritualised through the suffering of the man Jesus.... and at the same time the whole of humanity was released from the guilt of sin because one human being had sacrificed Himself for love on behalf of His fellow human beings. The man Jesus glorified Me Myself through His death, and I glorified Him by choosing Him as the eternally visible outward appearance for Myself.... by becoming a visible Deity in Him for all My created beings who make themselves worthy of 'Seeing God'. As long as you live on earth you can forever visualise My infinite love which had helped you to become liberated through the act of Salvation.... but you will only understand the complete profoundness of this act of mercy when you have entered the kingdom of light yourselves, when the light of realisation permeates you once again as it did in the beginning.... Then you yourselves can participate too, you will experience it as reality and only then understand My infinite love which did whatever needed to be done to regain its children who once went astray due to the immense guilt of apostasy from Me....

Amen

Jesus' Words on the cross: 'I Am thirsty....'

B.D. No. 7758

November 28th 1960

I thirst for your love.... and when you remember the Words I spoke on the cross 'I Am thirsty....' you will know that it was not simply a physical longing but that My soul was thirsting for My living creations' love.... that the 'Deity' in the man Jesus spoke, since now the act had been accomplished when I was waiting for death on the cross.... I thirsted for your love which was to bring you back to Me after I had redeemed the guilt of sin for you. For first you had to revive love in you in order to recognise and acknowledge Me Myself in Jesus Christ and thus **knew** the reason for the act of Salvation, for only **love** was able to reveal this knowledge to you, only through **love** were you able to recognise Me.... Jesus the 'human being' had voiced these Words on the cross but He was already united with Me and thus they were God's Words which arose from the tortured body, and these Words are to be understood as I explained them to you.... that the Deity yearned for the love of Its living creations.... Jesus the human being was not aware of having spoken these Words, and I expressed Myself such that people only understood the earthly meaning of the Words, because they would not have grasped that the Deity had permitted this superhuman suffering which, however, was the atonement for the original sin on account of which I had descended to Earth. The reason for people's immense guilt was due to the fact that they had once rejected My love and had become heartless themselves.... And I longed for the love of these beings which Jesus' crucifixion returned to Me provided the being itself is willing. And precisely this willingness presupposes **love**.... Once I possessed people's love they also came back to Me of their own free will and were able to do so, because the act of Salvation was accomplished for the whole human race. And if you consider Jesus' Words on the cross in this way, then the love He longed for should impel you to Him, in which case you show your love for **Me** for which I have yearned since your apostasy from Me.... For 'love'

brought you into being, 'love' gave you the test of will because you were intended to become even **more** than I was able to 'create' for Myself.... because you were meant to become My 'children'.... My love pursued you into the abyss in order to help you come up again, and My love accomplished the act of Salvation for you.... And in return you should only grant Me **your love**.... you should love Me with such depth of feeling which only a child can feel for its father. When I sacrificed My life on the cross for you, your guilt was atoned for and your return to Me became possible, My sacrifice of love was able to ignite your love in you, you were able to recognise it as such since you were no longer held captive in darkness because I had brought 'light' to you:.... My divine teaching of love, which showed you the path to Me and compliance with which signifies the re-transformation of your nature into love, will subsequently result in your lasting unification with Me and thus also the fulfilment of My yearning for your love....

Amen

Jesus' last Words on the cross....

B.D. No. 7764

December 5th 1960

I always want to give to you what you desire. You only need to take notice of your inner voice and it will instruct you truthfully, because I want you to live in truth and gain a clear understanding: My crucifixion has brought salvation to you humans, it has redeemed your past guilt of sin.... As the human being Jesus I took extreme pain upon Myself, and a most bitter death was My fate.... However, since I was unable to suffer as 'God' I took abode in a human shell which was **capable** of suffering and which also mustered the **will** to suffer on behalf of His fellow human beings in order to satisfy My justice, in order to open up the path to Me for His fallen brothers. Yet His will was **free**.... He was not impelled by the Deity within Him to accomplish the sacrifice He wanted to make for Me.... although **love**.... Which was Myself.... was the cause for which He mustered this will.... Yet I Myself never coerce the will of a human being and neither does My love. However, anyone who **has love** can't help himself but emanate it. And thus, the human being Jesus, too, radiated love and thereby only wanted to please humanity. Hence He only ever wanted what would help people to become blissfully happy. The will of the human being Jesus was **free**.... yet He had completely subordinated Himself to Me and My will. Consequently, His will **could not** be different to Mine. For the love in Him was so powerful that it had merged with the Eternal Love, with **Myself**.... Thus I Myself was in Him, and I Myself achieved in Him the act of Salvation

And yet, the human being Jesus had to take the final decision Himself when He undertook the most difficult journey.... the path to the cross. And even though I, the Eternal Love, was in Him, My divine Spirit withdrew, that is, Love.... the spirit.... no longer urged Him into action; it kept quiet and apparently left the human being Jesus to struggle on His own.... And this was the most difficult of all, the fact that the man Jesus felt **alone** in His suffering and nevertheless walked the path until the end.... He was not alone, for I would never have been able to separate Myself from Him again, Who had become one with Me.... But I no longer expressed Myself, because the atonement of the original sin necessitated an extreme amount of human suffering and torment which the human being Jesus had readily taken upon Himself, and therefore the sacrifice of atonement has been the work of the most merciful love that was ever accomplished on earth. And these pains lasted until His death on the cross and made Him proclaim 'My God, my God, why have You forsaken me....' I was in Him but I did not speak, yet it was only the body which suffered until His soul recognised Me again, when He called 'It is finished....' and 'Father, into Your hands I commit My Spirit....'

The body suffered until the end and I had to withdraw Myself during these hours or His already spiritualised soul would have rendered the body insensitive to pain, because My spirit is unable to suffer. And the human being Jesus had already attained the spiritualisation of soul and body as a result of His way of life on earth.... But the purpose and objective of His earthly progress was the redemption of the guilt of sin, which was only possible by way of an excessive extent of suffering and pain.... Hence the 'Deity' withdrew and left the 'human being' Jesus to His tormentors, who truly

carried out the most shameful work on behalf of My adversary, because Jesus Himself wanted it this way.... For His soul had offered of its own accord to descend to earth in order to make the sacrifice of atonement for His fallen brothers; it had offered to take on flesh in order to accept these said immeasurable pains and torments because only a human being was capable of suffering. And I accepted the sacrifice since it was, after all, made by 'love'.... which may never be rejected. And 'love' stayed in Him until His death, even if It no longer allowed Its **strength** to take effect.... Thus I Myself must have been in Him too, even if I remained silent at the end so that the act of Salvation could find its culmination: that a human being allowed Himself to be crucified for His fellow human beings.... that He truly made a sacrifice which I accepted as an act of atonement for the whole human race.... No 'divine strength' alleviated the sacrifice for Him, for 'Love' Itself remained quiet, although it had taken complete possession of the human being Jesus....

And this, too, is a mystery you humans are as yet unable to grasp.... The man Jesus had to taste the greatest suffering: to feel alone and abandoned. And precisely **this suffering** redeemed the sin which every being had burdened itself with when it **left Me**, Who had given them all My love, which they rejected. The human being Jesus had to experience this suffering, and therefore He spoke the words 'My God, my God, why have You forsaken me....' Yet you humans will never be able to understand the magnitude of the act of Salvation as long as you live on earth. Nevertheless, one day it will strike you with a sudden, blinding realisation and you will praise and worship Me without end.... For this act of Salvation applied to all of you, you all may participate in the blessings of the act of Salvation, and as a result of the act of Salvation the path was opened for all of you to return to Me

Amen

My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?....

B.D. No. 8201

June 27th 1962

My pain and death on the cross was indescribably excruciating and every description of the suffering is just a faint comparison with My real suffering because I foresaw every phase of My act of Salvation, I knew what My last task would be and I did not have the reassurance to reduce the pain for Myself since I had to suffer the last hours as a mere human being. I certainly had all the strength because God's, My eternal Father's, strength of love permeated Me until the end, but by using My will I Myself made no use of the strength of love, I did not accept its effect to reduce or alleviate the pain with its help, otherwise the act of Salvation, which called for the utmost amount of suffering in order to redeem humanity's original sin, would not have been completely valid....And the Deity within Me knew My will and allowed Me to continue, It withdrew Itself because it was My will to achieve the highest degree of love for humanity, which again was only for My Father, for Whom I yearned during the greatest agony, during the most severe suffering and particularly during the final minutes of My physical life.... And this yearning increased because I no longer used His effect, His strength of love.... And in this longing for Him, for My eternal Father, I exclaimed the words 'My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?....'

I Myself had wanted to complete the act of mercy for sinful humanity as a human being, because the greatest love I could offer My Father was to allow Myself to be nailed to the cross on His behalf, because He Himself had come to earth and taken abode within Me after all, because He had wanted to carry out the act of Salvation for His children Himself, but being 'God' He was unable to suffer.... And hence I accepted all torments and pain on His behalf and endured them to the end.... No matter how often and intelligible I try to explain this to you.... you will never quite understand it until the spiritual kingdom has received you, the kingdom of light and blissfulness.... And the simplest explanation is always the words 'The Father and I are One....' It was already a complete unification and therefore I was able to say: 'It is finished....' Jesus the 'human being' had sacrificed His life, He had suffered as a human being and experienced an unspeakably painful death....But He also had united with the Eternal Deity, because love was within the man Jesus until the end or He could not have said: 'Father, forgive them for they know not what they do.' And if 'Love' Itself stayed silent then only because it was

necessary in finalising the act of Salvation, so that death could then be ascertained by all the people in His vicinity.... so that His body could be placed into the grave from which He rose again on the third day....

Every expression of God's spirit in the end could still have caused people to doubt Jesus' death on the cross, because they would have recognised His bond with Me and faith in the act of Salvation would have been the compelling result, but it had to be a free decision of will.... You will not be able to understand this quite yet either, but as soon as you yourselves unite your spirit with the spirit of the eternal Father you will become enlightened, and then you will also understand My Word, which always aims to offer you an explanation that you can understand in accordance with your soul's degree of maturity or love. Especially in regards to the act of Salvation you should receive the pure truth and be given complete understanding, so that you can comprehend the magnitude of My love, Which came to earth for you humans, for your guilt of sin, Which accomplished the act of Salvation in order to re-open the path to the Father, to redeem your immense guilt of sin, for this had closed your path to the Father's house forever....

Amen

Good Friday....

B.D. No. 8964

April 16th 1965

The sin I had taken upon My shoulders was an inconceivably heavy burden and could only be redeemed through an equally immense sacrifice of atonement, as the path to the cross and the extremely painful suffering and dying on the cross was for Me. For this had been excruciatingly painful.... You humans are incapable of even remotely imagining that measure of suffering, for I felt abandoned by the strength of God, I.... Who had always been united with the Father.... had to walk the path alone, which seemed to last forever but which I nevertheless took upon Myself in infinite love because I pitied the human race and knew that only this sacrifice of Mine could bring salvation to humanity.... Time and again I had to experience the brutalities of the executioner's servants, and the whole world of hell participated.

Yet I was not allowed to defend Myself by using My indwelling divine strength, for this act of Salvation had to be an act of free will, on account of which I covered this path of suffering as a 'mere human being', always praying that I would be able to complete it, that I would not fail before the end, that I was also permitted to endure the death of the cross, which concluded the act of Salvation in the first place. You will only be able to assess the whole extent of torments and humiliations I had to endure when you enter the kingdom of the beyond, where you will be able to behold My crucifixion. Yet during your human existence you lack all concept of My torments, since a lesser measure would have killed you already, however, My will to redeem you was so strong that it gave Me the strength to taste all suffering to the extreme.... that I also endured the death on the cross consciously and still was able to pray for My tormentors 'Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do'....

They did not know that by nailing Me to the cross they nailed the Father Himself to the cross, Who wanted to redeem all people from every sin.... I knew that He had merely withdrawn Himself from Me so as not to exert force on Me as a human being, for only the **human being Jesus** was able to suffer and this suffering reconciled the Father. For this reason I spoke the Word 'It is finished....' in order to state that an eternally predetermined act had been accomplished.

However, its results encompassed the past, present and future.... And thus all beings which once had fallen away from God are redeemed.... One day in the beyond you will always be able to witness the crucifixion of Jesus, the human being, but no person will ever be able to assess the appalling torments as long as he still lives on earth.... for he will lack the understanding. His immense suffering, the immense suffering of the man Jesus, not only involved the physical pain inflicted on Him, instead, the suffering of His pure soul, having descended to earth from the kingdom of light for the sake of this act of Salvation, was far greater.... Only a soul which already dwells in the kingdom of light is able to comprehend what it means for a pure soul to be in the slough of sin.... what it means for a perfect soul

to stay in the midst of imperfect creatures.... but then it is also able to understand the depth of love which motivated Jesus to provide help for His sinful brothers, and then they will tremble with awe and give thanks and sing their praises to the One Who has redeemed the world from all sin....

Amen

'It is finished....'

B.D. No. 7668

August 7th 1960

The One who allowed Himself to be nailed to the cross on behalf of your sins has truly accomplished the act of redeeming humanity from sin and death. For I Myself dwelled in the human being Jesus, thus it was not a mere **human being** who accomplished an act which should only be judged in an earthly sense, but **I Myself** took pity upon the whole of humanity and atoned for its sin in order to enable its return to Me, which had become impossible for every single person because of the original sin, that is, the guilt of the past apostasy from Me and the fall into the abyss. It must repeatedly be emphasised that **I Myself** have offered the sacrifice in a human shell.... And it must be stressed that 'Love' made this sacrifice, but that I Myself **Am** the Eternal Love. You humans are unable to comprehend the full depth of this act, but you can be certain that it was not 'human work', even though the human being Jesus sacrificed His life on the cross; yet it only happened so that humanity would take notice and become aware of its enormous guilt, the redemption of which required an exceptional deed which was and will remain unique. Thereby the **complete redemption** was accomplished so that it only depends on the human being's will to release himself from the guilt of sin which burdens him for as long as he does not acknowledge Jesus Christ's act of Salvation. The act of Salvation has been accomplished for all time.... It need not be repeated, it covers the redemption of all once-fallen spiritual beings because I Myself attended to it, for the sake of My love I Myself wanted to remove the guilt and for the sake of **justice** I made **amends** for it. The enormous extent of suffering the human shell had to endure was sufficient atonement for Me.... However, the **human being** Jesus would have been **unable** to endure the extent of suffering by Himself had the **Love in Him** not enabled Him to do so. Time and again I stress that this act of Salvation is and will remain unique, because its redemptive effect will last for all eternity. As long as fallen spirits still exist, the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ will also be mentioned, and the acknowledgment of His act of Salvation will always liberate people from the guilt of their past apostasy from Me and, truly, no **further sacrifice of atonement** will be necessary because I Myself accomplished this sacrifice for all eternity.... Thus you humans should be satisfied with this explanation and not pay attention to satanically-inclined events which cannot be brought into harmony with My act of Salvation. For if ever My act of Salvation is described as incomplete, if ever people are shown a path to happiness other than the path to the cross, then the divine working of the spirit cannot be spoken of; then there will be forces at work which seek to prevent your redemption, which try to deter you from Me, Who wants to be recognised and acknowledged in Jesus Christ.... In that case you should be careful, for My adversary knows how to present himself in an angel's garment of light and then you will find it difficult to expose him. But always call upon Jesus Christ, Who certainly recognises His enemy and adversary, and appeal to Him for protection. For He and I are One, and if you pray to Me for correct thinking and for protection in every spiritual adversity then you will no longer have to worry, for then you will be guided wherever you go, the 'redemption' will reveal itself in you.... and you will clearly and assuredly recognise which way you will have to take and where danger threatens you. I have redeemed you from all sins, for My crucifixion was the atonement for your guilt. And this act of atonement cannot be lessened by My adversary, nevertheless he will continue to try to influence you humans such that you become unsure and start to doubt Me as your Redeemer Jesus Christ.... For during the time of the end many false Christs and false prophets will arise and try to pull you onto wrong paths. Then you shall be strong in faith and know that you should only keep to Jesus Christ, because by doing so you acknowledge Me Myself and call upon Me as a Father in every adversity and distress of body and soul....

Amen

Jesus' work of redemption

Atonement of guilt through Jesus Christ....

B.D. No. 6513

March 30th 1956

Taking humanity's suffering upon Myself was indescribably difficult.... There was not one bad deed which did not have to have an effect on people, and you would have had to suffer immeasurably if you yourselves had had to remove every sin weighing heavily on you. The sin of the former rebellion against God was so immense by itself that you would have been unable to atone for it, neither in your constrained nor in the human state.... For this reason I took all your guilt upon Myself, I collected the result of every evil deed and burdened My human body with it, which then atoned for your guilt by suffering an extremely painful death on the cross.... I was moved by My love to help you.... And all the spirits of light, all first created entities who remained loyal to Me, were filled by the same love for you.... Love, however, will never let anything go astray, love will not leave anything in darkness, distress and agony.... Love offered Itself for the deliverance, for the redemption of the immense guilt.... Love Itself descended to earth in an entity filled with light and love.... But the forthcoming events on earth had to take place in a human form; Love had to take on a human garment, I had to embody Myself in the flesh and therefore took abode in the human being Jesus, Who was nevertheless so pure and without sin that I was able to manifest Myself in Him.... And this human being Jesus made

Amends for your guilt, Jesus the man took humanity's enormous burden of sin upon his shoulders and walked with it to the cross....

Even if the inhuman suffering were described to you many times, you would be unable to comprehend its profundity because your nature's imperfection would prevent it.... His suffering was incomparably severe, and He knew of this well in advance since He was filled by My spirit, because I Myself had taken abode in Him. Consequently He knew everything, He knew about His mission as well as His crucifixion. His soul trembled and shook because He was a human being, and although the Divinity He had achieved due to His love certainly gave Him strength, it did not diminish the extent of suffering.... A human being walked to the cross Who wanted to suffer on behalf of His fellow human beings in order to help them. Because this human being knew about the immense suffering of those who were held captive in the abyss by My adversary.... Jesus knew that a sacrifice had to be made in order to purchase the souls from this opponent.... He knew that the immense guilt of sin had to be atoned for to satisfy the Father's justice, Who could not admit any child burdened by guilt into the parental home.... He wanted to return My children to Me, He wanted to pay the purchase price for the souls.... And since the guilt was enormous, the sacrifice also had to be exceptionally momentous....

And for this reason Jesus the man knowingly accepted the suffering, for this reason He allowed what was done to Him and what no other human being except Him could have endured.... He consciously walked the path to the cross and suffered indescribable torment which ultimately ended with a most painful death on the cross.... You humans are still unable to appreciate the magnitude of this act of compassion but you should always remember that He was completely innocent and suffered on behalf of you, who could never have returned to the Father from the abyss without His act of Salvation.... I Myself was within Jesus the human being, He was full of love because He could never have done this task without it. However, I had to remain silent during the most painful hours of His path of suffering because a human being had to suffer and die, since the Divinity within Him could not suffer, but according to divine justice the Divinity within Him could not redeem any guilt without atonement either.... One day you will be able to understand the full depth of what is still inconceivable to you, and then you, too, will be able to participate in this greatest act of mercy. Due to His human existence

Jesus the man lived in your realm and His soul, having descended from the kingdom of light, suffered terribly because it had looked into the deepest darkness and was besieged by the forces of hell.... Thus Jesus the human being not only suffered physically but endured the most intense torments of soul which increased His suffering a thousand fold.... However, He brought you humans salvation from sin and death....

Amen

The crucifixion started a period of Salvation....

B.D. No. 6600

July 20th 1956

My crucifixion concluded a period of redemption in a spiritual sense.... A hitherto hopeless state had come to an end, for until My crucifixion entering the kingdom of light had been impossible and even with the best of will people only attained a degree of purification; yet eternities would not have sufficed in order to completely remove the sin of the past rebellion against Me Thus, the weight of this guilt of sin forced them to stay under My adversary's control, so that the tormented souls in realising their adversity cried for a Saviour. However, from the moment I gave up My life for humanity's immense sin My adversary's power was broken, and thus a **new time** began.... The **first** entirely **redeemed** souls were able to leave their place of abode and enter through the gates to bliss, which I had opened.... This possibility remains as time and again souls will be able to release themselves from His power, time and again souls will liberate themselves from all shackles. The period of 'salvation' therefore **began** when I gave up my life, although the development through the creations and life on earth have been necessary for complete salvation and were only ever brought about to create the prerequisites which would then result in the complete return. And therefore one can indeed speak of a new time since the accomplishment of My act of Salvation, for only from then onwards was it possible to grant the souls the eternal happiness in which they were once permitted to live in light and strength.... Nevertheless, people are not aware of the fact that they are able to attain the most beautiful state, precisely because I Myself died on the cross for them in order to build a bridge from the realm of darkness into the kingdom of light.... They are not aware of the fact that they voluntarily hand themselves over to My adversary's control again if they don't acknowledge My act of Salvation.... that they cannot expect any other fate than that which was granted to the souls of people **before** My crucifixion: bondage and darkness, weakness and torments, which are the share of the unredeemed over which My adversary still has power.

The Saviour came from above and was only recognised by a few.... But the act of Salvation has been accomplished.... the gate into the kingdom of light was opened, and for this reason a new period of Salvation **began** with My crucifixion, even though Earth as such did not show any particular manifestations.... For it was only **possible** to change the hopeless state at the time through the acknowledgment of Jesus Christ and the act of Salvation, through a conscious inclination towards Him, through the acceptance of the sacrifice of love and thereby the redemption of the guilt of sin.... And once again people were granted a period of time during which, with good will, they were able to achieve complete redemption.... But this time has now expired, the incredible grace people were granted is not and will no longer be utilised.... People remain bound to the adversary's world because they make no attempt to release themselves and because their own free will must strive for this liberation. And thus a limit has to be set again; a new period needs to start, where the act of Salvation is highly valued again, where redemption can take place on a large scale, because the effect of the act of Salvation remains unchanged if only the will of people allows for this effect. However, those who are unwilling must once again feel the shackle of their captivity severely, so that even in these beings the desire for freedom, for blissful happiness awakens one day.... And My adversary must be deprived of this power over these beings which he keeps in such darkness that they can't see the light of the cross either.... And again, a new period will begin, for higher development of the spirits continues to progress constantly, and new souls will keep coming into this world, which are granted the opportunity to allow themselves to be liberated by Jesus Christ.... Time and again I pour the blessings of My act of Salvation upon these souls, and time and again such souls will also return to Me as My

children.... For the act of Salvation has been accomplished for all once fallen spirits, and it did and will take effect on all people, past, present and future, until the day redemption has been completely achieved....

Amen

The sacrifice on the cross was offered for time and eternity....

B.D. No. 7019

January 17th 1958

I accomplished the act of Salvation for all times.... As long as the return of the fallen spirit is not yet complete, the time will come one day when this spirit will live as a human being on earth, and during this time it will need My help, which will be guaranteed by Jesus Christ's act of Salvation. The blessings gained on the cross have to be claimed during this time if the human being finally wants to be liberated from his shackle which had caused his fall into the abyss, and which My adversary had put on him and was able to put on him because the beings had followed him voluntarily. Hence time and again a brief period of time will come for the once fallen spirit when it merely has to turn to the divine Saviour Jesus Christ, and thereby also acknowledge Me Myself again in Jesus Christ....

And this brief period of time is the life of a human being on earth, when the being receives its free will back and has to make a decision yet again.... Without help he could never make this decision because My adversary still keeps him in captivity. But due to My act of Salvation it is possible for the human being to make this decision, he only needs to make use of the blessings acquired for him to enable him to resist and to liberate himself from the opposing control. And for as long as the earth serves as a place for the spirit to mature, for as long as people live on this earth, Jesus Christ's sacrifice on the cross will be humanity's only guarantee of releasing itself from all bondage. Because it was offered for time and eternity, it will never solely belong to the past, and it will never solely be effective at the present time.... All future periods of redemption on this earth will only be successful in the sign of the cross for the souls who are embodied as human beings on earth.

And even in the kingdom of the beyond Jesus' redeeming strength can still be used, the Divine Redeemer has to be called upon in the beyond too, because then My sacrifice on the cross, and thus I Myself, will still be acknowledged and only this will lead to the separation from My adversary, which has to happen sooner or later if the being wants to attain blissfulness....

I accomplished the act of Salvation as a human being on **this** earth.... and this was a particularly blessed earthly period during which **many** of the once fallen spirits could have started on the path of return to Me. But their will was not and can never be compelled; consequently, countless more creations will still have to emerge, or infinitely many periods of creation will still have to follow. But they will all be governed by the act of Salvation, because there cannot be redemption without Jesus Christ, although My merciful love will consistently convey the knowledge of the sacrifice on the cross and the acquired treasure of blessings to humanity.

Time and again My spirit will be able to teach enlightened people, and time and again they will be able to understand all correlations and thus will also be able to truthfully explain the meaning of Jesus' act of Salvation to others, the act of My human manifestation on earth, and the deification of the man Jesus. And this knowledge will be taken along from one earthly period into the next and will never ever be lost.... since the act of mercy was accomplished for **all** human beings, for all people past, present and future.... And no once fallen being can return to Me if it does not voluntarily allow itself to be redeemed by Jesus Christ....

Amen

Your separation from Me would have lasted forever had I not accomplished the act of Salvation for you by taking your guilt upon Myself and redeeming it through the sacrifice on the cross, which I accomplished through the man Jesus on earth.... An unbridgeable gulf existed between the kingdom of light and that of darkness.... You would never have been able to overcome this gulf yourselves, My kingdom was closed to you forever because My justice would have been unable to accept you, who had become sinful as a result of your apostasy, until the immense sin had been atoned for. This sacrifice of atonement was rendered by Jesus, the human being, in Whom I Myself took abode, because His untainted human shell allowed for it, for I would never have been able to embody Myself in a sinful person.... Thus a soul of light had to descend to earth voluntarily in order to make

Amends for its fallen brothers for the sake of My justice, which could not be bypassed according to the law of eternity.... I Am a perfect Being, Which is indeed Love in Itself, but without justice I cannot possibly be called a supremely perfect Being. And Jesus, the human being, satisfied this justice through the sacrifice on the cross, which was offered by a soul of light with the intention of returning the fallen living creations back to Me, in order to build a bridge from the realm of darkness into the kingdom of light. However, I Myself dwelled in the man Jesus, for **Love** accomplished the act of Salvation, Which utterly permeated the man Jesus and also gave Him the strength to take the most severe suffering and pain upon Himself, to walk the path to the cross with all of humanity's guilt of sin and to lay down His life for this guilt.... Had this Love not been present in Him, He truly would have been unable to make such a sacrifice.... And I Myself was this Love....

I took abode in Jesus' shell, I.... the greatest Spirit of eternity.... manifested Myself in Him, I pervaded Him with My fundamental nature of love; My love utterly permeated Him, the human shell merely curtailed the working of My strength of love when He took the final path to the cross, where Jesus, the man, suffered incredibly and died the most bitter death on the cross in order to atone for the sin of the once fallen beings.... I dwelled in Him and He voluntarily accomplished the act of deifying His soul, which is the final goal of all My created beings.... He had totally merged with Me, He was I and I was Him.... I had become a human being, He had become God, for He was totally permeated by My love, and love is My fundamental substance.... Jesus' crucifixion absolved the great guilt and opened up the path for you humans into the kingdom of light.... However, you are not instantly redeemed, because your free will caused your apostasy from Me and thus free will must also be willing to return to Me; you must become aware of your past guilt and appeal to Me in Jesus for forgiveness, or you will remain burdened by your guilt and your entry into the kingdom of light will be denied to you. Time and again you humans are informed of Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation and the **spiritual mission** of Jesus, the man, is explained and substantiated to you. Even so, you must **believe** it, for you cannot be given any evidence apart from the fact that you.... once you have found redemption through Jesus Christ.... will gain complete understanding of it yourselves, because, as a result of the redemption through Jesus Christ, the working of My spirit will not be prevented, which will subsequently guide you into all truth, and this is the certain proof that you have been redeemed from your original sin.... But first you must take the path to the cross of your own free will, you must be willing to do so and **want** to belong to the circle of those who were redeemed through Jesus' blood.... and then you will truly accept and make use of the blessings of the act of Salvation. Then you will be on the path of return to Me, you will have stepped onto the bridge which Jesus built for you so that you can find admittance into the kingdom of light and bliss, and whose gate was opened for you through the act of Salvation by Jesus.... within Whom I Myself dwelled and became a visible God for you so that one day you would be able to behold Me face to face....

Amen

Jesus' resurrection

Resurrection....

B.D. No. 5934

April 18th 1954

Be glad and rejoice for He has risen from the dead....' These were the words of My Own and they believed in Me that I was Jesus Christ, the Anointed of the Lord, that I was really and truly God and had redeemed the world through My crucifixion. I had risen from the dead.... Thereby I had given them the evidence of the truth of My Words: 'Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up....' I had broken the power of death.... However, My resurrection was only meant to be the evidence for people that life does not end with the death of the body.... They should learn to believe in life after death, and therefore I allowed people to witness what every single soul will have to expect after its earthly demise. For everyone lacked this faith, even the priests and scribes referred to the prophets' death as evidence that even the most pious people will ultimately fall prey to death.... For they had no idea about the consequences of people's conduct, they doubted the resurrection of the soul, and therefore the teachings of the man Jesus were incomprehensible and inconvenient for them. And I wanted to clearly show people the **spiritual** consequences of following My teachings....

I was Lord over life and death.... During My life on earth I raised the dead and yet, people didn't believe that I had power over life and death.... And so I proved it to them, using Myself, that I was also Lord over death.... that life cannot be taken from **that** person who has already gained it spiritually, even if his **earthly** life is taken away from him....

But I also raised the physical body as a sign that nothing earthly adhered to it anymore, that it was also spiritualised and thereby had the inherent strength to arise in spiritual form.... Nothing earthly clung to My body anymore, as it had purged itself completely through appalling pain, because everything of an earthly nature had changed itself into spirit and this spirit was subsequently able to arise fully alive.... For this reason the body was able to emerge from the grave, for nothing kept it on earth....

The whole of humanity was intended to be informed of this process that, as well as why, it was possible to come back to life after physical death, for on this information.... on this faith in My resurrection.... also depends the faith in My divinity, the faith in My mission on earth as the Son of God, and, as a result of fulfilling this mission, they would attain complete union with God....

I have really and truly arisen from the dead and visibly showed Myself to My Own.... and thereby I proved to people that I had conquered death as a human being, that the one who had brought death into the world did not have the power to keep My body on earth, which, through the act of Salvation, was already clothed in a spiritual garment.... And this act of Salvation was made for the whole of humanity.... Consequently, no soul can be kept back by My adversary which - having been redeemed by My crucifixion - has escaped his power.... It need not fear death; it will arise to eternal life and can be jubilant and rejoice, for it knows that its Redeemer is alive and that He will give life to everyone who believes in Him and His resurrection....

Amen

Resurrection on the third day....

B.D. No. 6810

April 20th 1957

To what extent you humans acknowledge My act of Salvation determines whether you believe in life after death, in a resurrection from the grave into the kingdom of the beyond. Because the act

of Salvation, My suffering and crucifixion, found its culmination in the resurrection on the third day, which was meant to verify all My earlier teachings. It was meant to provide people with the evidence that life is not over when the body dies but that spiritual life begins once a person lives in accordance with My teaching. Admittedly, My resurrection is doubted and only taken notice of as a myth.... And neither can it be proven, such teachings can only be believed or rejected. This belief is also a result of My act of Salvation or an indication that the person is redeemed by Jesus Christ.... because he believes in Him as the divine Redeemer and therefore also utilises the blessings of the act of Salvation. However, the fact that My body visibly vanished from the grave does not mean that 'the flesh' had risen from the dead, instead My physical shell had completely spiritualised itself due to My suffering and crucifixion. It was the spiritual garment the soul had put on, which I only made visible to people in order to show them that death had finally lost its fear because I had conquered it. My life on earth intended to show people the path that leads from the abyss to the pinnacle....

To every one of My teachings I attached the promise that eternal life would await them.... But I required faith in Me in Jesus Christ.... Yet I found little of it, and even My disciples had little faith, and they were frightened to death when I handed Myself over to My enemies.... Their faith was not yet strong enough to believe that I was also Lord over death, consequently they did not remember My Words that 'I will rebuild this temple in three days....' Every one of My closest followers was seized by great sadness, something had fallen apart for them when they had to witness My death on the cross.... I wanted to help them, I wanted to strengthen their faith again and at the same time provide them with the evidence that I Am Lord over life and death....

For this reason I made something visibly take place which, however, is granted to all souls.... that they cannot die but wake up in another kingdom, which is in accordance to their life on earth. The soul leaves the body but this, still being immature, stays behind. Therefore a person has no proof of a resurrection after death and neither can it be given to him, on account of his freedom of will. But I was able to resurrect My body simultaneously because its substances had spiritualised themselves, and thus My resurrection on the third day need not be doubted. However, not all people were able to see Me, I only appeared to My Own because I had announced My resurrection on the third day to them, and because their degree of maturity allowed for it.... But those who found My tomb empty looked for many other reasons to explain the disappearance of My body, and therefore they were not compelled to believe. I had risen from the dead.... People had only been able to kill My body, and even this was no longer subject to natural law after My crucifixion, for it was liberated from all constraints....

But a human being on earth only rarely achieves the degree of maturity which enables the body's substances to align themselves with the soul after the earthly death of the body, and therefore the belief in a resurrection is extremely fragile or associated with wrong concepts. Therefore it has to be preceded by the redemption through Jesus Christ, because someone who is still burdened by the guilt of sin is still completely under control of My adversary.... And he will suppress every thought of a possible resurrection, he will only ever influence the human being in a negative sense and thus also portray My act of Salvation and My resurrection as implausible to them. The fact that the resurrection on the third day took place all the same will hardly be doubted by anyone who whole-heartedly professes Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation, since My spirit will tell him so. And thus his thoughts will be guided correctly by Me, since I can work through My spirit in every person who has found his way back to Me in Jesus Christ. He will not taste death anymore either, because he will enter into the life which Jesus Christ promised him.... He escaped death because he escaped the one who brought death into the world. And he escaped from him because he fled to Me in Jesus Christ. From the moment of his surrender to Jesus Christ he has risen from the dead, only now has he come alive, and he will eternally not lose his life again.

But even the disbeliever will not cease to exist, he, too, will only lose his earthly body and not his soul's existence, it will merely enter the kingdom of the beyond in a state which is similar to death.... The grave will keep it locked in, and if Jesus Christ Himself does not roll away the heavy tombstone, it will stay there. But the divine Redeemer died for everyone on the cross, and one day the hour of resurrection will come for every soul, because one day it will call for Me in Jesus Christ, and I will not

let its call go unheeded.... Then it will rise from the grave and awaken to life, then the darkness of the grave will recede and it may behold the light.... Because I died for all human beings, and even those who rest in their graves will take notice of the fact that I arose from the dead and that I will give life to anyone who desires to live....

Amen

Jesus' resurrection took the sting out of death

B.D. No. 7086

April 7th 1958

Every person's final hour is preordained.... And yet he need not fear it because it is not his actual end, instead, he will arise again.... because his soul will merely discard its earthly shell, which was only a shackle for it in earthly life, and enter the kingdom of the beyond unburdened, providing that its way of life on earth corresponded to My will.... that his soul therefore attained a specific degree of maturity on earth. Thus, there is no end, even though there is death, i.e. a dead state of the soul, the soul will not have perished. This is the reason why I died on the cross and arose on the third day again, so that the human being, that is, his soul, can also experience the resurrection, so that it can arise from the grave and enter the kingdom again, which is its true home. The fact that the soul will not cease to exist is an irrevocable law because.... everything that came forth from Me.... is and will remain imperishable. And the soul is the spiritual being which originated from Me, thus it continues to exist even though the body will die, but the fact that it can arise after its physical death in light and radiance only became possible after My crucifixion and My resurrection, because before this it was still burdened by the original sin of its past apostasy from Me.... There was still darkness, the dark of the grave, which the soul was unable to escape.... the tombstone had not yet been removed by Jesus Christ, the divine Redeemer.... in other words: the atonement for these souls had not been rendered as yet and without atonement the guilt of sin could not be redeemed.... Consequently, there was also darkness in people's souls, they lacked all faith in a resurrection after death, they were engulfed by the bleak night of the grave and death had become a fearful event.... And I rose on the third day from the dead to provide people with the evidence that the body's death is not the end, that the soul will rise again and merely leave the body behind, which is not so spiritualised as yet that it can take it along into the spiritual kingdom as I was indeed able to do because body **and** soul were clothed in a spiritual garment and the body no longer needed to go through a further maturing process on this earth....

Through My resurrection I wanted to take people's fear of death away, I wanted to prove to them that the soul merely changes location when it discards the earthly body, when the inevitable hour of death strikes. For this reason I have risen from the dead, for I conquered death, i.e. the one who had brought death into the world. And so no person needs to be afraid of the hour of death, for it is only the entrance into the actual life which is everlasting.... Death has lost its sting.... Nevertheless it is necessary that the human being acknowledges My act of Salvation and accepts the blessings I acquired for you through My suffering and dying on the cross.... that he allows himself to be redeemed by Jesus Christ, that therefore his original sin will have been atoned first so that Jesus Christ can subsequently push the tombstone away for the soul to rise from the grave's darkness into bright light, that it thus will enter eternal life.... Anyone who fears the hour of death is still subject to this immense guilt, he has not found salvation through Jesus Christ as yet, he has not released himself from the darkness enshrouding him, he still lays in the grave of his sin, even though his body still lives on earth.... For he will lose all fear of physical death when he has placed himself into My arms, when he sincerely appeals to Me to take care of him at the hour of his death.... For he will blissfully fall asleep in peace with his God and Father, he will leave only his body behind on this earth while the soul will arise, it will ascend to the light, it will not feel the darkness of the grave surrounding it, for Jesus Christ Himself will take its hand and lead it out of its physical shell, He will guide it through the gate of life. And it will know that it, too, has risen from the dead, that it will now live in eternity.... The fact that the human being Jesus rose from the dead is certainly true, and those who believe in Him as the Son of God and Redeemer of the world, as My Emissary in Whom I embodied Myself on earth, will not be afraid of their own hour of death, for Jesus Christ gave them the promise that He will go to

prepare a place for those who believe in Him.... Thus they will also be raised to eternal life and He Himself will fetch them as He has promised....

Amen

Jesus' transfiguration – Spiritualisation of Jesus' soul and body

Jesus' transfiguration 'My Father and I are One....'

B.D. No. 1739

December 15th 1940

The right solution to the problem of Jesus' transfiguration after His crucifixion also explains Jesus' Words 'The Father and I are One....' at the same time. God sacrificed Himself through a human being Who overcame every human aspect for love of God and Who therefore shaped His soul such that God was able to take abode in Him in all fullness. His external form, His body, totally complied with the soul's will and was likewise only disposed towards the Divine; thus every substance was God-inclined spirit, so that it no longer needed the process of development on earth and was therefore able to enter the spiritual realm in all perfection after the body's death. All perfected spiritual beings unite with the Elementary Power and, through a most heartfelt fusion, become as one with It. The process of development of the spiritual beings which had once fallen away from God lasts for an infinitely long time and, through countless levels, will also lead to ascent in the beyond but the external form, the less developed spiritual substance, always remains on earth and releases the soul which, as a spiritual being, will subsequently seek to join beings of equal maturity in the beyond. The external form dissolves and the individual spiritual substances affiliate with similar ones in order to continue their process of development.... However, Jesus' body, on account of its purity and actions of love, had already attained spiritual perfection and the inconceivable suffering on the cross had been the final process of purification for the body's spiritual substance so that, in this utterly cleansed state, it was able to join the perfect soul and no longer needed to stay on earth, and therefore the spirit of God, the soul and the body united, thus became one.

Jesus, the man, was the mediator between God and people.... but now God and Jesus Christ are One.... they should not be thought of as two beings next to each other but it is only one Being Which absorbs everything that is perfect. Jesus' divinity cannot be imagined in any other way than the eternal Deity Itself, Which merely affiliated Itself with the external shape of Jesus, the man, i.e. His spiritual substances were allowed to merge with the elementary Power, because at Jesus' death they had already reached a degree of perfection which is the prerequisite for the closest unity with God.... By despising earthly pleasures and, as a result of strict self-discipline, Jesus' body had overcome all matter and therefore no longer required a further process of development. All spiritual substances in the physical form were able to join the soul and leave the earthly valley together with it in order to enter the heights of light. From this moment on this soul was surrounded by the most brightly shining light, consequently Jesus' body and soul had to leave the earth in a transfigured state, for a being that is completely merged with God also had to receive light and strength from Him and thus emanate it in the same way as the eternal Deity Himself, because it was One with God, therefore also light and strength in abundance. This process of light emanation usually remains concealed from people, yet God's infinite love for people allowed the transfiguration of Jesus to occur visibly in order to give them a sign of His power and glory, to strengthen the faith of those who were to proclaim His power and glory to the world and in order to provide people with the evidence that Jesus had conquered death.... that from now on death no longer exists for people who follow Him and make an effort to take the same path on earth. Jesus' transfiguration has been a much disputed subject for humanity and was usually rejected as a myth, because people lack all spiritual understanding for the ultimate goal of every being.... for the final union with God.... for becoming one with Him.... However, Jesus says 'The Father and I are One....' For the union had taken place in Him already, His soul was shaped such that it was able to accept God and thus had already become a recipient of light and strength from God, thus He was able to teach all wisdom and work through divine strength. He was as perfect as His Father in Heaven and able to create and shape like Him.... His nature was love, His Words were love,

and thus He worked by virtue of His great love for people. For everything in existence and everything that happens can only be accomplished by love.... His life on earth was a constant succession of works of miracles without pomp and splendour, but He concluded it in radiant light.... by transfiguring Himself before the eyes of His Own and ascended to Heaven, to eternal glory....

Amen

Jesus Christ was dedicated to God body and soul....

B.D. No. 2345

May 24th 1942

Jesus Christ's body no longer opposed its soul; it demanded nothing for itself than the soul wanted, which had completely united with the spirit.... This was the state of Jesus, the man, when He had accomplished His act.... It was a state of utter dedication to God and total renouncement of everything belonging to the world.... His body, being entirely spiritualised, was totally independent from the earth and its laws, i.e. the spiritual substances of His human body had merged with those of the soul and effectively subordinated themselves to the spirit's will, which was most closely united with the Father-Spirit, and thus the earthly body together with the soul became one with the eternal Deity.... This fusion was so extraordinarily significant and entails such far-reaching consequences which the soul is incapable of understanding as long as it hasn't found the union with God itself. It was an act of immense self-denial, profoundest love and boundless dedication to God.... The soul of Jesus, the man, simultaneously drew its external shell, the body, into the sphere of God's emanation of love, and both His soul and His body were permeated by God's spirit of love, by His strength and His light.... Jesus, the man, was full of strength and light.... He was powerful and wise, and every creature obeyed Him, the whole of Creation complied with Him, for God was in Him in all fullness since neither the soul nor the body offered Him resistance any longer, and this boundless dedication also resulted in God's boundless activity.... Now it was God Himself Who manifested Himself in everything Jesus did and said. God's love takes hold of everything that hands itself over to Him, it permeates every creation as soon as its inherent spirit does not offer any resistance to the divine love.... Wherever this resistance is removed there can only be the love of God, therefore.... since God is love.... God can only be where He finds no opposition resisting Him.... Everything of God is divine as long as it offers no resistance. Only resistance turns God's creation into something external to Him until it relinquishes its resistance of its own accord.... Jesus, the man, was utterly devoted to God and thus no longer external to God but fused with Him, thus One with God.... and therefore totally transfigured, because the union with God is a state of bright light.... And when Jesus Christ passed away from this world He took His body along with His soul into eternity, for nothing adhered to Him anymore which required further development, both body and soul were perfect; every spiritual substance was so inclined towards God that it was permeated by God's light and love, that it was like God, because it had completely united with the eternal Deity....

Amen

Jesus is God....

B.D. No. 8422

February 25th 1963

Most profound wisdom can be revealed to you once you are receptive to it, and then you will also be able to penetrate knowledge which can only be understood in its complete profundity by an awakened spirit. Yet, if you desire an explanation where you are still not clear in your thinking, I will always help you to understand if you desire the truth. Then I will speak to you such that you can understand Me.... I will address My children with the voice of the Father according to their degree of comprehension: My nature is indeed inscrutable, and even if you steadily keep perfecting yourselves it will nevertheless remain unfathomable to you for all eternity. Nevertheless, you should strive for highest perfection and thereby finally find union with Me.... You should completely enter My nature, you should.... as once emanated sparks of light, merge again with the eternal fire of My love and still remain self-aware beings.... You will never be able to grasp this as long as you live as a human being

on earth because your thinking will remain limited during this time, but the said process of fusing with Me can only be explained by the fact that everything of a perfect nature knows no limitation, that the union with Me definitely signifies your complete permeation with My strength of love, but I Myself will eternally remain out of reach for you.... I Am, therefore, close to you and yet you will never be able to reach Me.... For you must not imagine Me as a limited Entity since I Am not bound to time and space. You will never lose your self-awareness again, regardless of how intimately you are united with Me, because you will be totally permeated by Me with My strength.... Yet in infinity you will act as self-aware beings, and precisely that is your bliss. Then you will have attained your deification, the goal I set for Myself when I created you. You will have become My images, you will consist of the same fundamental substance as I Myself and you will be able to create and work in brightest illumination of wisdom, in possession of unlimited strength and with complete freedom of will and let new life arise from within yourselves.... Having become as perfect as your Father in Heaven is, you are miniatures of Me.... Jesus' soul was also subject to the same law when it.... as a being emanated by Me.... had to undertake its test of will and passed it, thus it remained with Me when the host of originally created spirits fell away from Me....

This Being was so devoted to Me in love that It voluntarily offered Itself for the mission on earth to suffer for Its fallen brothers and to die as a human being in order to redeem the latter and bring My children back to Me.... Jesus accomplished this unique act, which no person has ever achieved before and will never be able to achieve afterwards either: to completely unite with Me on **earth** already, to manage the complete spiritualisation of soul and body so that the whole Being could be totally permeated, which was distinctly demonstrated by His ascension.... I was able to manifest Myself in Him, that is, I Myself, the Eternal Deity, the all pervading and penetrating strength, could never be personified.... However, I was able to completely permeate a form and nothing human remained in this form, even the external shell had become spirit of My spirit. The soul completely merged with Me and, in the true sense of the Word, 'Jesus' became 'God'.... His will, His thoughts, His actions were My will, My thoughts and My actions.... Two beings could no longer be spoken of.... It was an absolute union with Me, Jesus was, is and will remain for all My created beings the visible God.... The self-aware Jesus-soul returned to its original state of being, for it was the same emanated strength of love which merely united itself with the elementary power and thus completely merged with it, so that one can only speak of the Elementary Power.... of God Himself, the all-pervading Spirit, when Jesus is spoken of.... His Jesus-soul did not return as a perfect spirit from earth, instead it completely handed itself over to the Eternal Deity while it was still on earth, it abandoned itself for the sake of the greatest mystery: the human manifestation of God and His becoming visible for all beings which once had emerged from Him.... God and Jesus are one and the same, Jesus is not a second self-aware being but through His life on earth He attained the highest and final goal: complete fusion with Me, so that only My will and My thinking govern the Being Which controls and governs the spiritual kingdom as a visible God.... However, you humans will only be able to understand that when no limited concept exists for you anymore; and even then My nature will be, and remain, inscrutable, nevertheless you will be permitted to behold your God and Creator.... the most perfect Being in infinity.... face to face, and then you will know that apart from Him, Who became visible to you in Jesus, no other God exists.... And you will come aglow with burning love and forever strive towards Him, and He will return your love and make you abundantly happy.... For My love knows no limitation, nor will your beatitude be limited, instead it will last forever....

Amen

Spiritualisation of Jesus' body....

B.D. No. 8574

July 29th 1963

The body of Jesus Christ, which rose from the dead entirely spiritualised and continued to exist as a visible cover for Myself in order to be and eternally remain a visible God for My created beings is, however, an exception.... Jesus' body was indeed physical matter as well, yet it was created by divine strength.... The substances His biological mother gave birth to were likewise of a spiritual

nature which adjusted their demands, cravings as well as weaknesses to their environment, which were therefore so influenced by their physical surrounding that the body's desire was just as inclined as that of other people.... that the body reacted to all external temptations.... but as a result of Jesus' willpower resisted them time and again And this necessitated a constant battle, it necessitated a constant willingness to act with love, because Jesus also wanted to redeem all substances which, due to His human existence, made contact with His soul but which did not belong to another fallen original spirit. Instead, it had been an act of creation by Me for which I had chosen a person capable of giving birth to a human being in God-intended order, who thus carried the substances within which thus also formed the physical shell for Him.... which were also meant to be redeemed yet stay with the soul sheltering within.... Do understand: Jesus' body and the body of Mary were created in all purity and without sin.... but they took abode in a sinful world and therefore were not spared the temptations of this world.... They had to prove themselves in it, they had to fight an even harder battle against such temptations because My adversary was still able to express himself through matter, because he had the opportunity to influence a pure soul through everything surrounding it and his activity consisted of the manifold temptations which every person is subject to and which is every person's task to fight against....

This will still be incomprehensible to you humans: nevertheless, you may always believe that the complete spiritualisation of Jesus' body as well as Mary's succeeded, but that Jesus was the only being Who took His body along into the spiritual kingdom and retained it, because I wanted to become a visible God for all My created beings and that the complete unity of body and soul took place, which can never be undone again. The fact the many unredeemed spiritual substances clung to Jesus' soul and besieged it is also certain and that Jesus battle against these forces of darkness was very tough is also constantly emphasised, for on orders of My adversary these forces tried to make Him fall. And thus Jesus also had to fight against temptations which did not arise from His own body but were caused by the said dark force which availed itself of everything externally surrounding Jesus the man in order to tempt Him, and thus He had to suffer incredibly and fight against all kinds of these pressures despite His pure and sinless body. However, He redeemed many immature substances, which then were **also** permitted to fully mature as a human being on earth.... and these people were subsequently often recognisable by their obvious attitude towards Jesus and a way of life which followed Him.... It must never be assumed that **His** struggle was an easier one because of His pure body without sin, for enough immature substances adhered to His soul which He was not allowed to simply shake off but which He wanted to redeem as well in order to help them on their further path of development. But the fact that His own body in its entirely spiritual state also became and remained part of the soul must be equally credible to you human, for My dwelling in a human being presupposed all these unusual conditions, just as a purely spiritual conception and an unusual event at birth revealed divine intervention.... Nevertheless, Jesus was a human, and His battle as well as the spiritualisation of all bodily substances occurred in the same way as with all other humans: love and suffering accomplished it.... and love and suffering will be necessary time and again for the human being's complete spiritualisation on earth....

Amen

Jesus' resurrection and spiritualisation....

B.D. No. 7693

September 6th 1960

You can confidently accept it as truth that My body simultaneously spiritualised itself with My soul, that I was therefore able to arise from the dead because nothing of a physical nature remained in the grave which might have had to continue the process of development. During My life on earth I had also become master over My body, I had spiritualised all substances, that is, as Jesus, the **human being**, I had handed them over to My Father of eternity; nothing existed in My body which resisted the Father in Me, and I did not suffer the agonies on the cross for My sake.... for the sake of spiritualising My body.... but only in order to atone for humanity's sins with it. However, My body was still humanly inclined so that it felt and endured the immense pain.... Nevertheless, after I

had accomplished the act of Salvation for the human race with My death on the cross, I also wanted to provide you with the evidence of My spiritualisation which resulted in My resurrection from the dead.... Thus body and soul were able to arise because they had achieved the act of spiritualisation and nothing was capable of keeping this spiritual being in the grave, for the spirit penetrates everything, even the most solid matter. This spiritualisation of the body was certainly possible for Me because I was completely imbued by love and because love dissolves every impure substance, for.... where love is present.... nothing of an impure nature can persist, because love guarantees a unification with the Eternal love, since it consumes everything, only leaving the pure spirit behind, which thus can unite itself with the Primary Spirit of eternity. I remained in this love, and if you humans likewise shape yourselves into love, you will also be able to spiritualise your body, you will place all material substances into the right order and all inherently bound spiritual substances therein will turn to Me as the Eternal Love and give up all opposition, which had once hardened its substances and had been the cause of its banishment into matter. But this spiritualisation of the body will only be achieved by a few people while they are still on earth, nevertheless, it is **possible**. Then the body will also be able to arise at the same time as the soul, it is just that it will not often be perceptible to you humans because it is not necessary for your salvation of soul to experience unusual things which are generally not comprehensible to people.

However, the fact that I Myself have risen from the dead, that My body stepped out of the grave as well, can be believed by you, for My life as a human being truly was such that it was possible for the body's spiritualisation to take place, that nothing needed to remain behind in order to go through a further phase of development. I had found unification with the Father of eternity.... I was completely pervaded by Him, I no longer lived outside of His nature, I was merged with Him for all eternity. But the 'nature of God' cannot be made understandable to you, for He is a Spirit Which permeates and pervades everything.... He cannot be personified, nor is He visible, He is strength and light on such a scale that it would consume everything had it not shaped itself to a high degree of love, which was in Me during the time of My life on earth as a human being. And therefore this light and strength was able to infuse Me completely without having to perish, but also My spiritualised body maintained its form despite the abundance of divine spirit, so that I remained visible to the beings which face Me with a high degree of maturity.... The Great Spirit of eternity, Which permeated the whole of the universe had manifested Itself in a human form.... I had become visible for My created beings in Jesus Christ, for I Myself Am also a **Being** which you will only understand when you yourselves, full of love, have entered into union with Me.... And then you will also grasp the problem of My resurrection, the spiritualisation of body and soul and My complete merger with the Father-Spirit of eternity.... Only then will you understand the unity of Jesus and the Father.... Only then will you be totally united with Me and you will recognise Me Myself, your God and Father of eternity, in Jesus Christ.... For He and I are One, and he who sees Me also sees the Father....

Amen

Jesus' descent into hell

'Descent into hell....'

B.D. No. 6315

July 18th 1955

When humanity's hour of salvation struck, the previously departed spiritual beings.... the souls of people **before** the birth of Christ.... dwelled in an intermediate realm, neither on earth nor in the kingdom of light and bliss, and waited for their hour of salvation.... This is only comprehensible for you humans if you know about the original sin and the reason for the act of Salvation, if you know about the infinitely wide chasm between the once fallen spirits and God.... The human being's earthly life was unable to bridge this gulf, even if it was lived according to divine will, for the original sin had not been redeemed as yet and the human being would never have been able to redeem it during one life on earth.... the redemption through Jesus Christ, however, applied to **all** spiritual beings, the act of Salvation was accomplished for all people, past, present and future.... For Jesus' crucifixion opened the gate into the kingdom of light, so the souls in the intermediate realm were also able to enter as soon as they acknowledged the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ.... This plan of Salvation through Jesus Christ regarding the return of the spirits to God was decided from the start, and from the time of the first forefathers the coming of the Redeemer was repeatedly announced through seers and prophets.... And all people who professed God, who made an effort to live according to His will, were told about the Messiah Who was meant to bring salvation to people.... Yet not all **lived** to see Him, many generations before Him were called back from earth, and their souls would now have to linger for their Saviour. This is why Jesus descended to hell after His death.... He wanted to bring them deliverance from Satan's shackles as well, since the latter was still able to keep them enslaved because the guilt of sin had not been fully redeemed as yet. For God's adversary would never ever have released these souls to which he was entitled in view of the fact that they had followed him voluntarily into the abyss. However, in hell, too, existed many obstinate souls which only regarded the divine Redeemer, like everyone else, as a human being akin to themselves and did not believe in the redemption through Him from sin and death.... Their free will to decide also had to be respected, therefore Jesus did not enter this realm of spirits in His radiant state but as Jesus, the man, Who had died on the cross.... Yet many knew that He was the Messiah Who was repeatedly announced to them.... All souls could have found this faith in Him, because God's messengers of light had constantly informed them of the events taking place on earth.... and because the forefathers devoted to God in that realm did not stop informing them of the prospect of the divine Redeemer's coming.... For they acted on the Lord's instruction, so that His descent into hell would be expected and He was thus able to bring redemption to countless souls and open the gate to beatitude for them as well.... The descent into hell resulted in the return of the first fallen spirits to God, for whom the human being Jesus had paid the purchase price through His crucifixion, and thus, from then on the actual process of return began; the first spirits having been bound by Lucifer found their freedom for good, even though their previous life had already prepared the path for these souls up to gate, which was still closed but which Jesus had opened and thereby cleared the path into the Father's house for every soul which wants to walk with Jesus Christ....

Amen

Descent into hell.... Lucifer's opposition....

B.D. No. 6531

April 25th 1956

It is true that I descended into hell after My death on the cross and that I also brought redemption to those who had not yet entered the gate into eternal bliss, because this gate first had to be opened by

My death on the cross.... Countless souls had awaited the hour of their salvation and I appeared to them as Jesus the human being, and I described to them My suffering and death because they, too, had to voluntarily acknowledge Me as Son of God and Saviour of the world. But I was also accepted by those who had lived a good life on earth; I was not rejected by everyone, nevertheless countless souls resisted Me and rejected the gift of grace, My Salvation.... My adversary's influence on these souls was so strong that they only saw Me as the human being who had revolted against earthly rulers and hence was sentenced to death.... The freedom of will had to be upheld for all these souls. Therefore I could not appear in power and glory.... I had to come amongst them just as I had walked amongst the people on earth.... as a human being Who only by means of the Word tried to convince them of His mission and the accomplished act of Salvation.

But My adversary did not want to let go of the souls, nevertheless for the first time he realised the consequence of My act of Salvation.... he could not hold on to the souls who acknowledged Me, who voluntarily wanted to follow Me through the gate which had been opened by Me for them.... They were released from his power, they broke the chains with the strength they received from Me, because I Myself had loosened them.... Hence My adversary raged even more amongst his followers, and now the battle of light against darkness (the battle of darkness against light) began in earnest and has never ceased, and thus rages on earth and in the spiritual kingdom.... I had descended into hell to bring salvation to all those whose earthly life had ended before I came to earth.... to all those who, in spite of a right way of life, were still subject to My adversary who even fought against Me Myself and against whom I fought on earth for every soul he was keeping in chains.... And he lost a large proportion of his followers....

I had died for all those souls and everyone could have liberated themselves from him. But his fury was never-ending when he saw himself deprived of his followers.... when he had to realise that I had gained a victory, but which was entirely achieved by love. He, too, could have submitted himself to love, yet his power, his ownership, was still too large and he resisted the strength of My love, and hence it could not take effect on him either. But the moment had come when he had to realise that his power was defeated.... He had to accept that he had found his master in the human being Jesus, Whose love had achieved unification with Me.... And thus his hate grew ever stronger because the divine Saviour Jesus Christ had now become a serious opponent Who could take his followers away by virtue of His love. But My adversary still found a helpful solution in the fact that this depends on every being's free will and constantly tries to influence his victim's will, be it on earth or even in the spiritual kingdom. But I descended into hell after My death on the cross, and I continue to descend into hell to bring salvation to all those who want to liberate themselves from him, and he will not be able to stop Me, he will never be able to forcibly retain the souls who want to follow My call.... His power has been defeated by My death on the cross, but even this crucifixion could not break his resistance, his hatred and his will are unyielding, his actions are evil, and his essence is entirely without love....

For this reason he lacks the strength to give life to the dead. His remaining strength will only ever be used for negative actions, and thus positive strength has to weaken his activity ever more.... love has to attract and draw to itself everything which is lifeless and then revive it again.... With My descent into hell the return of the once fallen beings to Me had started, the awakening of the dead into life had commenced, for love has proven that it is stronger than hate, love has made

Amends on the cross for the guilt which had resulted in the death of the beings. And thus life has been bought for them, he who had put the beings into the state of death had been defeated....

Amen

Descent into hell....

B.D. No. 6543

May 10th 1956

On your own you will never succeed in transforming your nature, for you lack the strength to do so. However, there is One who has acquired this strength for you.... The human being Jesus

managed to achieve something on your behalf to remedy your state of weakness which was the consequence of your past rebellion against God.... Thus He took the consequences of this guilt of yours upon Himself, He paid for your guilt with His death on the cross and thereby made it possible for you to receive strength again.... He has acquired the strength for you and dispenses it as a gift of grace.... providing you avail yourselves of the blessings, for which your acknowledgement of Jesus Christ as Son of God and Redeemer of the world is a prerequisite, which also includes the acknowledgement of Jesus' divinity. But what previously was impossible, that a person could change himself again into the being of light he had originally been, became possible through Jesus' crucifixion, and so the return to God will with certainty have taken place if only the human being abides by Jesus Christ, if he appeals to Him for help on the path to perfection. The strength he subsequently receives is sufficient to liberate himself from the control of the one who had pulled him into the abyss and mercilessly kept him captive there, because without the help of Jesus Christ the being has no strength of its own to resist. Jesus Christ, therefore, also descended to hell to bring help to those who had already lost their earthly life before the act of Salvation and were still controlled by God's adversary. They did not succeed in liberating themselves during their earthly life, for they were very weak willed and thus succumbed to the former and remained enslaved by him until the Saviour Jesus Christ arrived Whom they were allowed to follow unhindered, because He had also paid the purchase price with His blood for **their** souls. Yet even these souls' free will had to be observed.... but which was subsequently strengthened if the soul was not entirely hostile....

However, the descent into hell is not being understood properly if only the willing souls are being mentioned.... Jesus, the Crucified, also showed himself in the slough of total depravity, He dared to venture into His adversary's, His fallen brother's, realm.... He stood before Him with His wounds and showed Him what love was able to achieve.... He faced him like a brother, but even this immense sacrifice was unable to soften the latter's heart of stone.... Scornfully the prince of hell turned away and with him a large crowd of most evil spirits.... Love did not find the way to their hearts for their hatred was greater and their will was free. God certainly knew that this would not be successful; nevertheless, the inhabitants of hell were offered the treasure of grace too, for love does not stop, not even for the most abject creature, but it does not compel its surrender.... Yet the act of love by Jesus, the man, could not overcome the hatred and opposition, nevertheless, it was offered to the beings of darkness as well, for Jesus' love applied to all living creations and the descent into hell was a final attempt to persuade God's adversary to turn around, to give him the final opportunity to change and to shorten the time of redemption for the fallen beings.... But even this greatest act of love, which God Himself accomplished in Jesus, the man, did not succeed in changing Lucifer's arrogance and heartlessness, in fact, the latter regarded Jesus' crucifixion as a triumph of **his** power and strength.... He considered himself the winner who had succeeded in delivering a divine being to his servants.... who certainly recognised in the Being that had descended to hell the One Who had 'died' but not the One Who was 'resurrected'.... Lucifer did not surrender, which the Deity had foreseen from the start.... and thus was able to base on this the work of guiding the fallen beings back which, however, will also return this prodigal son into the Father's house one day when he recognises his weakness, but this will still take eternities until all those having been seduced by him have been completely redeemed....

Amen

Jesus' appearance after his resurrection

Resurrection on the third day....

B.D. No. 7320

March 29th 1959

And you all can rejoice, for the Lord has risen from the dead.... Thus it rang out in the kingdom of the spirits as well as with My Own to whom I appeared on the third day when I had left the tomb and showed Myself to My disciples.... Deep sadness had entered their hearts for they had lost what had been their sole purpose in life throughout the time they had spent with Me on earth.

They believed that they had lost Me to death forever, since they did not and could not believe that I would rise from the dead, even though I had informed them of it before. The disciples were still earthly bound in that way and the reality of the earthly world was sobering to them, they were seized by so much fear and lamentation that I wanted to comfort and strengthen them and thus appeared to them after My resurrection.... I had given them the task of going out into the world and proclaiming Me, that is, spreading My divine teaching of love and informing people of the act of Salvation which I had accomplished for all humankind.... But in order to carry out this mission they had to be completely convinced of the truthfulness of their proclamations....

And the act of Salvation also included My resurrection which ultimately was the crowning glory of the work of Salvation, for the people should be informed that I had defeated death, that death need never ever be experienced again by anyone who follows Me, who wants to receive the blessing of My act of Salvation and who thus leads the kind of life that I had lived on earth. Hence he will not need to fear death anymore because I had defeated death and thus also the one who had brought it into the world. And that is why My resurrection was visibly witnessed by people, that is, only by those whose degree of maturity permitted **spiritual** vision since My body was spiritual, it was no longer a body of flesh and therefore only visible to those who already possessed the ability to see spiritually and to whom I therefore also had announced My resurrection.

The fact that My tomb was empty certainly also surprised the other people, yet they all looked for other explanations than that I had risen from the dead.... And this teaching will simply always require a 'belief' which, however, can be acquired by all people who voluntarily step under My cross, if they want to belong to those for whom I died the most bitter death on the cross. The belief in Me and My act of Salvation simultaneously includes the belief in My resurrection, because a soul having been redeemed by My blood already has the inner certainty of an indestructible life....

The disciples were not yet permeated by My spirit, they were still in the dark after My crucifixion, for their fear did not allow any light. And thus I helped them by means of My visible appearance but which then convinced them so overwhelmingly and made them so joyful and happy that they now thought they could easily carry out their mission and with increased strength wanted to apply themselves to the proclamation of My teaching and My crucifixion as well as My resurrection. In the days after My resurrection I was able to convey instant strength to My disciples, for the salvation of their souls had progressed and they were already able to free themselves from their previous lord, and then they unhesitatingly proceeded with their preaching ministry because they knew that they could no longer die, or that only their body could die but that they would continue to live in My kingdom, and thus death had now lost its sting for them too....

Hence the act of resurrection was more or less first an aid for My Own, whom I had left behind in utmost psychological distress because their faith had still not reached the necessary steadfastness for their task of spreading My Word throughout the world.... But they were meant to speak on My behalf, and therefore they had to also have this convinced faith which only required their complete

redemption, but then all My disciples irrefutably possessed this faith so that they were able to be truly devoted proclaimers of My teaching once their mission began....

Amen

Easter....

B.D. No. 7579

April 17th 1960

And I rebuilt the Temple again as I had promised.... I arose from the dead on the third day, and My body also left the grave because it was My will that people should take notice of My resurrection. They did not believe in life after death and I wanted to provide them with the evidence that it had also been possible for Me to conquer death so that they would believe My promise that every person who believes in Me will arise into life. For this reason I let the body in its spiritual state arise from the grave, I appeared to My disciples who were able to see as well as touch Me because they should believe that I arose from the dead as I had previously announced. But only those whose spiritual state permitted it were able to see Me, for I was no longer physically among them, instead, body and soul had spiritualised themselves and therefore were only visible to those who were able to behold Me with spiritual eyes because I had opened their spiritual vision. And this, on the other hand, was the reason why people doubted, that they argued and voiced the suspicion that My body had been unlawfully removed.... just as even today My resurrection on the third day is still doubted by those who do not understand the soul and body's process of spiritualisation. People do not believe in a resurrection of the soul and yet, all people will experience the same process, when their body dies, of the soul leaving the body and entering the kingdom of the beyond, for it cannot die, but its state can be entirely different depending on its way of life. Had the latter resulted in maturity, the soul would arise into life.... to a new life in the spiritual realm.... My soul was fully matured, it had united with the Father-Spirit of eternity and during earthly life also knew how to influence the body to adapt to its desire, so that the body would already have attained the spiritualisation of all substances on earth and thus was able to arise after death with the soul, of which I provided the evidence on the third day. Yet even this process can only be **believed** because it can no longer be proven. But anyone who is spiritually awake, who knows of the human being's purpose and goal on earth, also believes in My resurrection on the third day with convinced faith, for he will be informed by My spirit which, after My resurrection, also illuminated My fully mature disciples who had spiritual vision, because it was My will and because they were already prepared such that the event of the outpouring of the spirit, My ascension, no longer signified a coercion of will. Therefore only a few individual people were able to behold Me after My resurrection and I strengthened these individuals for this unusual event. They saw Me.... and I wanted it this way, because My disciples were meant to go into the world in order to proclaim My Gospel and because they were to bear witness of My resurrection on the third day. However, I did not appear to the unbelievers, for they would not have been able to endure My abundance of light which would have illuminated their spiritual darkness. But anyone who hears My Gospel, who believes in Me and My act of Salvation shall also be able to believe in My resurrection from the dead, and it will indeed be possible for him to believe it because the spirit in him, which emanates from Me, educates him in the same way and grants him a living faith. He will not require any other evidence, inwardly he will be completely convinced that his soul will arise into life, consequently, he will also live his life on earth consciously, he will strive towards unity with Me, he will keep to Jesus Christ and in Him enter into contact with Me Myself.... he will strive spiritually and constantly try to live up to My will.... and he will not need to fear death because he will know that he will arise into eternal life....

Amen

The ascension of Jesus Christ

The Ascension of Christ.... Transfiguration....

B.D. No. 3622

December 7th 1945

My life on earth was a path of love which I concluded with My death on the cross.... My body was on earth, that is, it was subject to all natural laws, My soul was with God, it lived a spiritual life and thereby became powerful enough to conquer the body, to likewise make it strive towards God which subsequently spiritualised soul and body, so that the external form sheltering God, the eternal Father in all fullness, was no longer an obstacle for His working. The external form could therefore no longer succumb to physical death, because only matter sheltering immature spiritual substances is mortal, i.e. changeable within itself, but not completely spiritualised substance. Hence soul and body were able to enter the spiritual kingdom in a perfect state, they were translucent and, being permeated by light and strength, were able to leave Earth, which was a process My disciples were allowed to witness as it occurred before their eyes, so that they were able to behold God's glory in order to receive strength for their mission on earth which subsequently commenced for the sake of humanity's redemption. Their task was to inform people of My act of Salvation, of My way of life, My teaching, of My excruciating suffering and death on the cross and of My resurrection and ascension.... And for this mission they had to be prepared, they had to live a life of love themselves, they had to be profoundly faithful, having recognised in Me the Father of eternity, they had to accept My teaching wholeheartedly within themselves in order to be able to pass it on; they had to be guided into truth in order to comprehend My sacrificial death, and thus they had to be living followers and able to preach with innermost conviction. And for this reason they were also allowed to witness My ascension on earth, the last sign of My glory, My divinity, I was able to give to them as a human being, which completed My life on earth but which must remain alive for My Own for as long as the world exists. For My transfiguration, as the fulfilment of My teaching, was indeed comprehensible to My disciples yet only understandable to people if they followed Me, lived a life of selfless love and thereby became able to grasp the truth and accept profoundly divine wisdom. When they know that the purpose of earthly life is the spiritualisation of soul and body and the result of it is brightest permeation by light they will also find My ascension credible. For this reason My only purpose of earthly life was the preaching of love, for this reason the Word became flesh, in order to show people the right way, to exemplify a life of love and to encourage them to follow Me.... Only love achieves a spiritualisation, and only love delivers the human race from death and awakens it to eternal life....

Amen

Jesus' Ascension....

B.D. No. 7358

May 8th 1959

It is difficult for people to believe what cannot be proven when it concerns phenomena which are outside the law of nature, which therefore can only be taken on faith as true. This also includes My ascension, the final event of My presence on earth, which truly took place against the law but could only be witnessed by perfect people. And these perfect people were instructed to include this information when they told other people of the Salvation through My death, of My suffering and dying on the cross and My resurrection.... Hence My disciples also spoke of My ascension but they were only believed where people, due to their faith, were already more spiritually minded and who were therefore also able to **believe** what was conveyed to them. Nor did they dare doubt the witnesses of My ascension because they felt that these, My witnesses, were speaking the truth and proclaimed the Gospel to them on orders from above. For this reason the faith in the Ascension of Jesus was

preserved for a longer time, it was not as doubted as is the case now, where love has grown cold among people and faith can already be called completely dead. Besides, there are no credible witnesses of this event and people must unconditionally believe that what is known to them as tradition or from the Book of the Fathers is true But living faith is missing, for this can only be awakened by a life of love, so that a person's spirit thereby wakes up and enlightens him and an easy solution to this problem is found, which can never be discovered without an awakened spirit. When I ascended to Heaven I was surrounded by spiritually awakened men and women with loving hearts who adhered to Me with ardent devotion. And thus they were able to observe a process which was entirely natural because My earthly body no longer existed, instead, I only adopted a completely transfigured body in order to be able to remain visible to these people until I left them to return to the kingdom where I had come from. My kingdom is pure light and love and cannot be seen with physical eyes, only the spiritual eye can behold it, just as every pure spirit dwells within an ocean of light and can also only be seen with spiritual vision.

At the time of death a perfected soul takes on a garment of light and radiates full of magnificence and glory, and were people already spiritually perfect then they could also occasionally see such a figure of light when the soul leaves its earthly body behind after the completion of its physical life and enters the kingdom of the beyond. For every soul making an effort to attain perfection on earth will already be spiritualised to a certain degree so that it can clothe itself with a radiant garment, it is just that only very few people have this gift of grace to be able to spiritually see when a soul leaves its earthly body. This is why spiritually dormant people cannot be convinced that after My resurrection I 'ascended to Heaven....', which was a process that only took place in all splendour for the sake of My disciples, so that they were able to comply with their task with convinced faith in My power and glory, for they were supposed to carry the Gospel throughout the world and make My resurrection and ascension known to people.... To what extent a person is able to believe in this depends entirely on the strength of his love for Me and his fellow human being.... Everything is rooted in the fulfilment of My two commandments: Supreme realisation and a living faith arise from the love for God and one's neighbour, yet without fulfilling these commandments it will be impossible for you humans to believe what cannot be proven to you due to your freedom of will. But you can consider yourselves blessed if you believe without evidence, for you will be rewarded for such faith one day if it was the result of a selfless life of love.... Then you, too, will put on a radiant garment of light and not taste death, you will also 'ascend to Heaven....', you will be able to enter the kingdom of peace and beatitude and be permeated by brilliant light, because then you will dwell in light for all eternity....

Amen

Ascension of Christ....

B.D. No. 8506

May 23rd 1963

The time of My visual existence for people on earth came to an end when I ascended to heaven.... For I had fulfilled the mission as a human being and finally gave My disciples and those who believed in Me as the Son of God a last sign which should strengthen their faith.... I showed Myself to them once more and demonstrated to them My Divinity by way of visibly ascending to heaven.... which they were only allowed to observe due to their strength of faith and which, in turn, should provide them with great strength for their further mission: to proclaim Me and My Gospel throughout the world.... No evidence can be provided for My ascension either, and yet it took place before the eyes of those who were completely devoted to Me. For My ascension no longer compelled them into believing, they had recognised Me and no longer doubted anything, but they had also been initiated into the most profound knowledge by Me and therefore I was able to ascend before their eyes as a last sign of My might and glory, which occurred and could occur visibly because I gave My Own exceptional strength for this experience. However, it was only a process which will be experienced by every soul that perfects itself on earth once it leaves its body and then enters spiritual realms in radiant light which, however, will remain concealed from the human eye. But it glides up into the kingdom

which is its true home. Evidence of this should also be given to people even though it will not be acknowledged by still immature people who have not achieved any kind of spiritualization.

The ascension of Jesus will remain a myth to people as long as they have not penetrated spiritual knowledge, because something unusual had taken place which in fact only My followers were allowed to experience. However, it will no longer be doubted as soon as the human being's soul has acquired a certain degree of maturity where nothing will be disbelieved anymore due to the realisation that nothing is impossible to God.... With Jesus' ascension the act of Salvation was concluded. I had descended to earth and returned to My kingdom again which I nevertheless had never left, for I was and Am everywhere, but I had taken abode in a human form so as to be visible to you humans, and therefore I also ascended visibly again in order to then always and forever remain visible to everything I created for the sake of its beatitude....

My Own stayed behind and felt lonely and abandoned as I disappeared from their sight, yet they were imbued by My spirit and clearly recognised their mission now, and they felt impelled by the spirit to carry out the task with which I sent them to all nations on earth. For this reason I let them experience the extraordinary event which was the final miracle on earth that completed My earthly progress.... For they needed much strengthening of faith since their contact with Me had, after all, resulted in a certain amount of dependence which they still had to overcome, and thus every one of My disciples time and again was able to recollect the final events in order to then do My will with wholehearted enthusiasm.... Yet I remained with them in spirit, and throughout their activity for Me they were frequently allowed to hear My Words which revealed My presence to them, so that their love for Me grew ever deeper and thus their knowledge increased to the same extent, and with it their ability to work for Me....

I had redeemed people's immense guilt of sin through My act of Salvation, and humanity had to be informed of this which could only happen again through human beings who themselves had experienced Me and My crucifixion.... Now they could proclaim the purest truth about this great act of compassion, and thus especially My first disciples were unusually strengthened and equipped for their mission, I had personally been able to teach and prepare them for their task in advance and I had extraordinarily strengthened their faith, although they kept their freedom of will. However, their love for Me and their way of life permitted My additional gift for their office, for the whole of humankind should be informed of this occurrence which had originated from the divine sphere for the sake of people and thus I required appropriate servants and messengers to spread this information. And these had to be able to support with full conviction what they were teaching.... Their love had enabled them to cope with unusual experiences and to eagerly bear witness of everything to their fellow human beings as well. But this knowledge of My act of Salvation will always necessitate a certain degree of love in order to be accepted and believed.... Yet a loving person will be infused by My spirit and guided into every truth, as I Myself have proclaimed....

Amen

The outpouring of the spirit

The disciple's enlightenment only happened after Jesus' crucifixion....

B.D. No. 7148

June 19th 1958

I still have much to say to you but you cannot comprehend it.... How often did I speak these Words to My disciples who were certainly always around Me yet were often unable to understand **who** was talking to them and the relationship they had with the One Who spoke to them.... However, they were not yet enlightened by My spirit.... They were only able to receive My spirit after I had offered the sacrifice on the cross for the whole of humanity. Prior to this it would have been completely pointless to initiate My disciples into the most profound wisdom, even though I had done the work of preparing them before. For their work solely consisted of going out into the world to proclaim the Gospel of love to people and to inform them of Me and My act of Salvation, because it was of greatest importance for all people to regard Me as their Saviour from sin and death, the Only One who was able to set them free from the night of death. That which My disciples needed to know for this teaching ministry was revealed to them through My spirit, and thus they were able to fulfil this teaching ministry correctly, they were able to provide people with clarification if they requested it and occasionally were also able to see clearly into the spiritual kingdom.... Through their contact with Me and the kingdom of light they were instructed from this realm as well and so they themselves were brightly enlightened.... They recognised Me as their God and Creator of eternity, as their Father Who had descended to His children in order to help them in their immense spiritual adversity. But they only gained this **absolute** realisation **after the outpouring of the spirit**, after My ascent to Heaven.... As long as I still lived amongst them they regarded Me as a human being, although the Deity within Me constantly expressed Itself, both verbally as well as through the actions of the man Jesus. It had to be this way, they had to be able to observe My life on earth until My death with complete impartiality, for they, too, were free beings whose thinking, will and actions were not allowed to be determined by any kind of spiritual coercion.... Consequently, not everything could be revealed to them **before** the outpouring of the spirit, because it would have destroyed them, that is, they would have been unable to deal with it mentally and neither would they have been able to become suitable messengers for My teaching of love, who were to go as My Own among people and were likewise not permitted to provide them with compelling evidence of faith. I knew My disciples, I knew their state of maturity and always gave them what they were capable of understanding.... but the realisation came to them in a flash when My spirit poured out over these disciples. Every person will be taught in this way if I Myself can ignite the light in him, and only then will more profound wisdom, of which he previously had no understanding, be made accessible to him. Nevertheless, you, My disciples of the last days, shall spread the knowledge you receive across the world again, for it can contribute to a person's desire for My spirit.... But **only then** will the knowledge he previously accepted with his intellect make him happy, but first it has to enter his heart in order to come alive then the light of realisation is ignited in him.... And therefore you should always proclaim My teaching of love first, for only love enables Me to pour out My spirit, love alone kindles the light, for Love Itself is the light of eternity, and anyone who lives in this light has truly escaped the darkness, all secrets reveal themselves to him, for I manifest Myself and he will be blissfully happy....

Amen

The event My disciples experienced at Whitsun can repeat itself with everyone of you, for I have promised My spirit to all people with the Words 'I will send you the Comforter, the Spirit of truth....'. It was not merely a unique experience only intended for My disciples, instead, My spirit flows time and again to those people who make heartfelt contact with Me and appeal to My spiritual strength. And, in fact, everyone can feel the strength of the spirit within himself, as his thinking will become enlightened, everything that was previously incomprehensible will be understandable to him.... For My spirit grants clarity and light because it is a direct illumination from Me, Who is the Light of eternity.

Hence, the outpouring of the spirit upon My disciples was not a unique experience, instead, this process was taking place for the first time, since prior to My crucifixion it was not possible for a person who had not yet found redemption through the blood of Jesus Christ to be imbued by My spirit.... As long as people were still afflicted by the original sin they were unable to establish this heartfelt bond with Me; the guilt of the beings' apostasy from Me stood between Myself and each and every person, and it was impossible for My spirit to permeate a soul encumbered by sin.

Once the act of Salvation had been accomplished the path of return to Me was also open for every person.... From then on it was possible for every soul to so shape itself through love that the awakening of the spirit into life took place, so that the spiritual spark in the person strove towards the eternal Father-Spirit and the person's heartfelt bond with Me enabled Me to pour My strength into him.... so that My spirit filled His soul and brightly enlightened him, teaching him from within in all truth.... so that the divine abilities, which laid dormant or buried within as a result of his past original sin, emerged again.... so that all these abilities became extraordinarily dominant and testified to his unity with Me.... so that they thus proved the divine nature of the one who had entered into unity with Me....

Then the disciples were able to speak, for they were filled by My spirit; they were able to perform miracles, heal the sick and also have an insight into the spiritual kingdom.... Then they were true apostles of My Gospel for they recognised the truth within themselves, they were guided and impelled by My spirit to speak according to My will. They were permeated by the strength of the spirit, just as I previously promised that I will remain with My Own until the end of the world.... And this promise did not just apply to My disciples but to **all** people.... which this promise self-evidently shows.... I always wanted to please people, I always wanted to pour out My spirit, always convey the truth to them, which was only possible through My spirit.... Yet how rarely has My Word been understood, how rarely is this promise taken notice of, and therefore the outpouring of My spirit not aspired to either, even though everyone would be able to experience it....

But I also linked it to the condition that you should believe in Me and keep My commandments.... for the 'outpouring of the spirit' is like a direct 'revelation'. And I can only reveal Myself to someone who lives in love, who thus awakens the indwelling spirit to life.... Do understand that My spirit will guide you into all truth.... that I, the Eternal Love, reveal Myself.... that I convey knowledge to you and thus educate you from within.... And in this way I also instructed My disciples. I gave them the ability to understand everything I had previously told them, and then, according to this understanding, to proclaim Me Myself and My act Salvation to their fellow human beings, for they should be informed of My will and the cause of their wretchedness, as well as the goal I had set for their life on earth. Thus, they needed to know everything **themselves** in order to truthfully instruct their fellow human beings....

And at present I likewise fill My disciples with My spirit again and send them into the world, because people shall know My will once more and everything that lays ahead of them.... The Gospel of love shall be proclaimed to them anew by My servants who are imbued by My spirit so that they can carry out the task I have allocated to them.... For it is the time of the end and people ought to

know the truth, which only I Myself can give to them through My spirit, which permeates those who are willing to serve Me, and who I send into the world again before the end has come....

Amen

The outpouring of the spirit upon the disciples then and now....

B.D. No. 8803

May 16th 1964

I promised you that I will remain with you until the end and My Word is truth. However, I linked it to the condition that you should ask Me, that you should want the answer from Me, the Eternal Truth Itself. Therefore you must enter into contact with Me and you will receive what you ask for. For it is not only My disciples who received the outpouring of the spirit.... all these privileges are intended for My Own who were in such heartfelt contact with Me that I was able to grant them the same privileges as My first disciples. This activity affecting My Own has been portrayed as **unique**, it has been said that it only related to 'My first disciples' and it was an exclusive process. Subsequently, the 'working of My spirit' in a person has not been taken notice of, and it is specifically this activity of My spirit in a person through which I Am recognised as your God and Creator, for precisely this establishes the connection between Myself and people. I only need a receptive heart into which the flow of My love's strength can pour in order to reveal Myself to the person.... And My revelations disclose the most profound knowledge concerning that which you are no longer aware of. You shall learn once more what you used to be, what you are and what you shall become again.... this information shall be given to you and thus you shall become enlightened. I was able to pour out My spirit upon My disciples because they were completely united with Me, because they had fulfilled all conditions which are the prerequisites for the working of My spirit, and because, prior to this, I had accomplished the act of Salvation for their original sin. Thus My disciples were filled by My spirit and declared on My instructions what I Myself had said to them. They were able to teach according to My instructions and preach My Gospel to people. And thus I will remain with you until the end, for I ascended to heaven and only wanted to inform you of My presence. You shall experience it time and again and not believe that you are abandoned, for My spirit is always in the midst of you, who are intimately united with Me. I want to educate you and increase your knowledge so that you can rightfully say 'The spirit of God works in Me'. And I can only teach you the truth, as I had promised with the Word 'I will guide you into all truth and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you'.

Amen

The church of Christ

The church of Christ in its beginnings....

B.D. No. 8375

January 8th 1963

My disciples received the Gospel of love from Me directly when I lived on earth, and thus they were able to carry it into the world in its pure and unadulterated form after I accomplished My act of Salvation and ascended to My kingdom of light again. And they, on their part, also kept My teaching pure and people came to know Me as their Redeemer from sin and death.... They were instructed by My disciples that they would have to take the path to the cross and live a life of love in order to be able to fulfil the purpose of their earthly life and to enter My kingdom after their death. My disciples were guided into truth by Me and also passed on the same truth because My spirit was able to work in them.... In the beginning, therefore, people accepted My pure Gospel and also made an effort to live a life of love, and thus they, too, became spiritually alive and I was able to work in them Myself. And so My teaching remained pure for a certain period of time, My disciples passed on their teaching ministry because they recognised the spiritual state of those they appointed as their successors....

Yet it did not take long before people assumed such a teaching ministry by themselves, partly due to selfish reasons, partly due to overzealousness of complying with My will but without waiting for the inner calling.... And so it came to pass that this teaching ministry was eventually conferred indiscriminately.... that the inner ability, the human being's spiritual state, was no longer pertinent but that external circumstances played a part and thus increasingly endangered the pure truth as well which, however, was not noticed precisely because of the teachers' unenlightened spirit.... The people, however, to whom the Gospel was preached were denied the right to form their own opinion and to voice doubts about the absolute truth of what they were taught.... Those who deemed themselves spiritual leaders were convinced of their mission and authority and allowed no contradiction whatsoever. And those who were being taught were obliged to accept without scrutiny that everything they were offered was true. It was only possible for the truth to remain pure as long as its guardians were spiritually enlightened themselves. Yet the number of those who were placed into positions of authority without being enlightened by My spirit soon predominated and all objections by a spiritually awakened person were dismissed.... The former grew more powerful and the pure truth became interspersed with error.... with ideas which had originated in people's intellect and were endorsed by them as divine truth. And although spiritually enlightened people time and again tried to eliminate this error.... My adversary succeeded to assert himself, for his followers' power was already too great and the pure truth was no longer recognised as such.

This explains to you that in the course of time something entirely different established itself as the 'church of Christ' than what was founded by Me on earth.... Only this explains how an organisation came into power, why time and again divisions occurred within this organisation and why I only ever want the 'church founded by Me' to be regarded as a spiritual edifice that includes those people who live in truth due to of a life of love, which results in a living faith and the awakening of the spirit. And this church has indeed kept itself alive to this day, for time and again My spirit could pour itself out over people who made an effort to live a life of love and to fulfil My will.... And so the pure truth which exposes all misguided teachings could always be imparted to them again, and every genuinely truth-seeking person will receive an explanation how humankind was able to fall into such confused thinking and is unwilling to free itself from it. Yet it will also be understandable to everyone that the masses will never be open to the truth but willingly accept error, and thus every individual person should try to free himself from wrong spiritual knowledge as soon as My grace offers him the pure

truth, for just his sincere desire will enable him to differentiate between truth and error, and then he will also belong to the church which I founded on earth Myself....

Amen

Remitting or retaining sins.... Jesus' disciples....

B.D. No. 3297

October 17th 1944

“Whose soever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them; and whose soever sins ye retain, they are retained....” These, too, are Words of Mine which were frequently interpreted differently than I had intended them. Only a person with an awakened spirit who hears My voice and conveys My explanation to you is able to correct this, so that you can liberate yourselves from error and know the truth.... My disciples were endowed with the power of working miracles in My name, of healing, of reviving the dead and thereby proving to people the strength of their undivided belief in Me. Their spiritual state allowed for all supernatural activity, for when My spirit poured into them it filled them with strength and light, with power and wisdom. Hence they were able to spread the truth because they knew it themselves, and by the mere voicing of words they were able to achieve things which exceeded all human ability. For they had been My disciples.... I had instructed them through the inner Word while I lived on earth, they lived in love and believed in Me, therefore they were also able to accept My spirit within themselves and work through it. These extraordinary acts were signs of their souls' maturity which, in turn, were intended to prove to people what extraordinary abilities a person can achieve if he lives according to My will, that is, if he shapes himself after My image.... into love.... For love is strength, consequently, a person who loves is also permeated by strength and light, because he can be permeated by the spirit of God, His emanation of strength. And I exemplified to people a life of love.... I demonstrated to them how much strength the human being can attain and after My death I left living examples behind which were meant to proclaim My teaching of love again to demonstrate their strength and thus make it easier for people to believe in Me.... Even if I was no longer visible, I Myself was in the midst of My disciples in spirit.... I guided them, since everything that is permeated by My spirit is subject to My divine guidance.... because I Myself was subsequently able to take effect through those who were working in My name. Hence the disciples had the same power and the same right, because everything they accomplished was My will; they were enlightened by My spirit, which is the emanation of Myself. Consequently, they also had the power to forgive sins in My name, especially if illness was the result of sins and, in order to cure this illness, they had to remit the human being's sins as well. However, if they recognised a person's unworthiness, his unbelief and God-opposing will, they were just as entitled to leave him in his sinful state, for they were not governed by human understanding but by the divine spirit within them, My spirit, which knows everything and thus also a person's unworthiness and the futility of a merciful action on him. Thus I gave My disciples the right to grant to people according to their realisation, because My spirit was active in them and guaranteed that My disciples thought correctly....

But now people assume the same right even though My spirit is not effective in them as yet.... They associated the right to forgive or retain sins with the person itself and not with the divine spirit in this person and thus conferred this right to all followers of the disciples according to the word and not according to the spirit and therefore misunderstood the meaning of My Word, although they would also think correctly if they realised who is really My disciple.... Not those who appoint themselves but those who I have appointed for their teaching ministry on earth.... For I gave My disciples the instruction ‘Go ye therefore, and teach all nations....’ But in order to teach, My spirit must be effective in them so that they will be able to distribute the pure truth to people and to spread My commandment of love in the world. Yet the truth can only be taken possession of through the working of the spirit. Therefore, it is imperative that My disciples must be enlightened by the spirit of God before they can count themselves as My disciples. In that case they will also be permeated by light and strength and able to accomplish extraordinary feats, the power of the spirit will enable them to heal the sick, thus to release people from sin and its consequences as soon as they believe in Me and My name.... To these spiritually enlightened people I gave the power of forgiving sins, since they also recognise in

their spiritually mature state when a person deserves to have his sins forgiven, for then they will act on My behalf and it is I Who really forgives their sins. But if people feel themselves appointed to carry out the act of forgiveness of sin even though they have never been called by Me Myself, who are neither enlightened by My spirit nor hear My Word within themselves, their calling can rightfully be disputed, since this is already demonstrated by the fact that they are incapable of recognising their fellow human being in order to judge whether to remit his sins or to let him keep them. The assessment of this already presupposes the working of the spirit which, however, has to be denied to most of those who deem themselves called as servants of God as long as they do not possess the inner Word. Only through My Word are they called to work for Me, for only My Word gives them knowledge, that is, it conveys the pure truth to them, and this is absolutely necessary in order to be able to work for Me. Anyone who knows the truth can also pass it on and thereby helps his fellow human being to achieve liberation. Anyone who has My Word will also have the competence of judgment when a person's will is inclined towards God. For the human being's spoken word is often deceptive, the heart need not be involved in what is voiced by the mouth. But a true disciple has the gift of recognising his fellow human being and therefore also knows which person is serious about the forgiveness of his sin and does not allow himself to be misled by many words which lack inner conviction. Therefore, the remission of sin cannot be a general act since it can only take place if it was preceded by profound repentance and recognised as such by My disciples. But in that case the judgment of the latter will be valid before Me, for he only acts on My instructions and his deed is according to My will. With those Words I gave My disciples the understanding that their activity and thinking will be in complete concordance with Me if they work for Me in My name, that they cannot think and want anything else but what is My will if the divine spirit is working in them which, however, characterises them as My disciples in the first place. For I Myself appoint My servants on earth because I truly know who is qualified for this ministry and upon whom I can endow those gifts which are required by a teaching ministry on earth.... And to them I will also give the authority, for then they will only carry out My will....

Amen

'Thou art Peter, the rock, and upon this rock I will build My church....'

B.D. No. 4942

July 27th 1950

I certainly established a church on earth but I did not want an organisation.... I say this to all those who interpret My Word 'Thou art Peter, the rock, and upon this rock I will build My church' such that I Myself Am the founder of worldly organisations which call themselves the true church of Christ. Like all My Words these, too, were intended to be understood spiritually, in fact, they are very easy to comprehend if the faith of My disciple Peter is understood as a rock, which everyone must possess in order to belong to My true church. My church is a purely spiritual foundation; it is to be understood as a community with a faith as rock-hard as Peter's, but never the amalgamation of people in a purely secular organisation, which has to be called secular because everything that proves the affiliation to this organisation must be outwardly recognisable and because further regulations or laws were decreed which inhibit a person's thinking and actions, which entirely contradicts My will. It is My will that people wanting to belong to My church should strive towards Me of their own free will, which necessitates faith in Me as well as love.... Neither can be enforced nor achieved through regulations; love for Me does not awaken as a matter of duty but through faith in My perfection, and although this faith can be taught, it cannot be demanded. The human being must bring himself to believe after he has received knowledge of Me, of his Creator and Father of eternity. A human being only becomes a member of My church through this self-attained faith, therefore My church cannot be an organisation with a mass of members who lack living, self-attained faith. For although faith and love are being preached, the listeners must nevertheless first activate their will in order to acquire the right of belonging to the church which was founded by Me.

And therefore I repeatedly emphasise that people could not have formed this church by establishing an organisation in which, like in any worldly organisation, leaders of various ranks work, to whom I

have never appointed such a ministry, whose functions are more of a ruling than a serving nature and who are often not members of the church I founded themselves because they, too, only believe blindly what they were taught and as yet have neither acquired a convinced faith through deliberation nor a living faith through activity of love. Hence these believe themselves to be My representatives on earth, and yet they are unable to convey truthful knowledge to people because they don't possess it themselves. They feel that they are Peter's successors but they are not because their faith lacks the strength of a rock as soon as it is tested. The church founded by Me will prove itself.... not even the gates of hell will defeat it. But once the walls of the former are shaken, which is intended by My will, it will not survive and only blindly believing fanatics will remain steadfast but not on account of conviction but because of fanaticism which is not valued by Me as faithfulness. For I want people to think about everything they encounter, and it is My will that they shall acquire vision and don't remain blind due to their own fault. I also want them to think about My Words: Thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.... I want people to reflect on how these Words of Mine are to be understood: It is My will that they should be truthfully interpreted and you humans also recognise when human interpretation does **not** correspond to the spiritual meaning which I have placed into My Words. And you will be able to recognise it if you dwell on it with willingness for the pure truth when you are taught by those who call themselves My representatives on earth. My true representatives are certainly informed of the truth and can therefore also provide their fellow human beings with a correct explanation regarding My Word and its deeper spiritual meaning. However, My representatives also belong to the church founded by Me, even though they are not members of an earthly organisation. My true representatives will also announce in My name to all spiritual organisations the end of their existence, because everything that has distanced itself from the real truth will fade away, even if people are convinced that that church will be invincible. Only the church which I Myself have founded on earth will be invincible, which is a spiritual community of those with a faith like Peter's and who, through this faith, shape themselves into My image, who can indeed have a living faith because they are instructed in the truth, who allow My spirit to be effective in them, which always is and will remain a sign of affiliation to the church I have founded....

Amen

Acts 7, 55-56....

B.D. No. 8836

August 4th 1964

Why do you not keep to My simple explanation that I Am not visible to you humans in My fundamental nature, which would consume you if I were to illuminate you with the abundance of My strength of love? Why are you not satisfied with the explanation that I created a form for Myself in Jesus in order to be visible to you? You will, however, fight in vain against those who want to believe that Jesus and I are separate beings, who rely on information they don't understand due to their unenlightened spirit. No-one can see God.... without ceasing to exist.... In Jesus I Am visible to a person. Where people allegedly have seen Me and Jesus, the error is obvious too, since this can never ever be possible. Even the disciples could not comprehend this enigma apart from a few, and thus reports appeared which did not correspond to truth.... which should always be questioned whenever people speak of a Deity separately from Jesus.

Stephen certainly saw heaven opened and he also saw Jesus in radiating brightness, he saw Him as God, but the people with him associated his vision with purely human concepts. The sentence 'the Son of man sitting on the right hand of God' was added by people.... since it is not possible because Jesus and God are the same.... I Am an immensely bright fire Which cannot become visible to you, which you cannot see in your imperfection and which even in the state of perfection would affect you to such an extent that you would want to pass away. Thus, anyone who states that he saw 'Me and Jesus at My right hand' is still bound to the Scriptures, which he himself is unable to understand, which speaks to him in images, but the words of the Scriptures do not reflect what Stephen exclaimed during his spiritual vision.

And the same applies to the basic doctrines of the church which state 'that Jesus is sitting on the right hand of God'. These developed due to a misguided perception.... The reason for the apostasy from God was that the beings were unable to see Him, He did not reveal Himself as Entity.... and therefore He created a form for Himself into which He radiated Himself....

Thus I became as one with this form Jesus.... This also applies to the teachings of the Mormons who are equally unable to understand the human manifestation of God in Jesus and therefore endorse the doctrine of three Gods. And this is what I want to say to them: You believe that you cannot let go of this doctrine but you should know that it is no longer taught to you as it once emerged from Me.... Because you, too, received My Word in all truthfulness, but what have you done to it?

Anything that originates from Me is purest truth, but it is no longer known to you. You have turned it into a misguided teaching which deviates from the truth in many ways, and now you attempt to pass these misguided teachings on to those whom I instruct Myself....

Yet time and again I will choose a suitable vessel for Myself into which I can pour My spirit, and this can carry bright light into the darkness of spirit.... it can enlighten you about those problems which arise from controversial issues.... And you will benefit from this, because only truth takes you to the goal. I constantly seek to transmit it to earth so that no-one who desires the truth can say that He was not approached by Me. You only need to desire it sincerely, otherwise it cannot be given to you, since this is My condition which I cannot revoke. Then the truth will surely be given to you and you will also reach your goal with certainty.... you will become blessed for eternity....

Amen

How long did Christ's doctrine remain pure?....

B.D. No. 8890

December 5th 1964

I draw those of you close to Me who want to be addressed by Me, who have questions bothering you which only I can answer for you. Many a time one question has been asked: how long did Christ's doctrine remain pure and what caused it to become contaminated? And I have always taught you such that it remained pure for as long as a direct working of My spirit was possible.... however, when people of unawakened spirit took the lead.... people who could not be taught by Me directly, in whom My spirit simply could not work any longer, **then**, understandably, it had to change.... The first disciples, as well as their successors, were still in close contact with Me, they were still influenced by My crucifixion, for although quite some time had passed afterwards it was nevertheless a powerful event to which My first disciples testified, so that they found numerous followers who adopted the divine doctrine of love and also endeavoured to live a life of love.... who thereby accepted the faith in the divine Redeemer and also attained the awakening of their spirit.... While this was the case My doctrine remained pure, their faith was alive and My first disciples were able to keep educating apostles and sending them out into the world with the task of proclaiming the Gospel of love. And every messenger was under My direct influence, he only ever passed on what the voice of the spirit within him told him, what he had to say because he was filled with the 'spirit of God'. The dilution of My teaching did not **suddenly** take place either, one thing followed another as someone or other was unsuited for a ministry but appointed himself to fill it or was elected by those who were also spiritually unawakened. In due course, the initially small communities grew into larger organizations which, in turn, were answerable to someone more powerful who elevated himself to this position because he possessed knowledge which other brothers lacked, but which could not be called spiritual knowledge. Thus a structure began to appear which, in the beginning, was still managed by good people but which took on ever worldlier forms, who certainly saw their task in spreading the Gospel but simultaneously also pursued earthly objectives, for they no longer possessed the characteristic of My church.... inner enlightenment through the spirit.... so that they eventually only observed the dead letter but were no longer able to demonstrate a living faith.

The church which I Myself founded on earth has not changed, even today it is still made up of those who believe in Me with a living faith and in whom My spirit can be active.... whom I can therefore

guide in their thoughts so that their thinking is always right and they have a living bond with Me. This church has weathered all times, it survived in the midst of large organizations because its members were from all confessions and they were alive in their thoughts, determination and actions. Therefore, no time can be specified as to how long it remained pure.... For time and again I say to you that I only consider **those people** to be members of My church who know themselves to be close to Me, who live in constant union with Me, who believe in Me and with whom I can therefore speak through the spirit.... And everywhere, in all denominations, there have been people who were very close to Me, I was able to reveal Myself far and wide and guide them into profound knowledge.... Yet whether they were acknowledged as true vessels for divine revelations depended upon the spiritual state of those who considered themselves leaders and who were already considerably distant from the truth. The number of My true disciples has also shrunk considerably, and even today I send them out to preach the Gospel to the nations, the Gospel of love, because only through love can people prove that they belong to Me, to My church, because then My spirit will be able to be active within them, which is the surest sign of it. But only **they** will acquire the kingdom of heaven, only to **them** can I convey the truth and reveal My plan of eternity.... For far more important things are at stake than just the observance of church traditions and performances which are of no value whatsoever for the progress of the human soul.... It concerns the life of the soul which it can only achieve through loving actions and a living faith.... To make this known to their fellow human beings was the only task I gave to My first disciples. And I accepted everyone into My church who observed these commandments, and even today the same commandment is still valid: 'Love God above all else and your neighbour as yourself...'

Amen

The second coming of Christ

Christ's Second Coming....

B.D. No. 3768

May 12th 1946

My birth on earth occurred at a time when people's thoughts were in total disarray, at a time of great heartlessness and profound unbelief, it happened at a time when the human race was incredibly distanced from God.... That is, when I came to earth Myself in order to bring help in spiritual adversity. It was not the serious earthly difficulties of individual people which motivated Me to do so, but purely the spiritual hardship, for this signified certain downfall for an infinitely long time to come. I came to them Myself because their hearts remained unaffected by the written Word, thus I came Myself and brought them the Word through the mouth of Jesus, the man, in Whom I took abode and thus spoke through Him, because no-one can attain bliss without My Word.... And now it is just as it was at the time of My birth on earth, the same immense spiritual hardship prevails, the human race is in a hopeless situation if it does not receive help. Heartlessness is rife, faith is paralysed, the written Word has become meaningless for people, for they no longer live up to it and therefore cannot release themselves from their adversity either. And therefore I have come to earth again, except that I Am in spirit amongst people, as I have promised that I will stay with My Own until the end of the world.... I Am with them in spirit and reveal Myself to them through the spirit....

Once again I bring My Word to them, I speak to people, and those who are of good will can also recognise My Word. And what would be more understandable than that I will not leave people without help? How else can they be helped unless I speak to them Myself? And in order to do so I must avail Myself of a person, I can only speak through a human mouth so as not to aggravate people's state, i.e., so as not to deprive them of their freedom of faith, which would exclude any improvement of their spiritual state. My Word needs to be conveyed to people again in all purity as it originates from Me, so that it can also take effect on them. And since I Am the Word Myself I come to you Myself, I Am amongst you spiritually, I have descended to earth again in order to bring you help. And as I speak to you I also inform you of the time you are approaching, since it is My will that you know the great responsibility you have for your souls. This is why I address you, I draw your attention to the end, I admonish and caution you, I advise you and explain everything you need to know. And thus My presence is irrefutable for every thinking human being.... For once a person has recognised Me, once he believes in Me, he will never be able to deny a connection between the Creator with that which He has created; thus it will also be self-evident for him that I Am close where My presence is not resisted, and he will also believe that I want to prove My presence through My Word, which comes forth from Me directly and thus testifies to Me. I Am with you in the Word, it is My Second Coming, which I predicted would happen prior to the end.... And thus you can also expect this end with certainty, for I Myself told you the signs which precede the final end, and everything I proclaimed in Word and Scripture will come to pass, for My Word is and will remain truth for all eternity....

Amen

The process of Christ's return.... Ascension....

B.D. No. 4847

February 26th 1950

My return, My coming at the end of the world, is being doubted by those people whose faith is not entirely firm. And yet, they would be able to recognise the individual phases of the end time and also perceive My presence simply by being observant. 'I will remain with you always until the end of time....' These Words alone should be sufficient for you to form a correct idea of My return. The fact that I Am not visibly in your midst should therefore allow you to understand the spiritual

meaning of My Words. I Am staying with My Own until the end of the world. For, since My ascension to heaven, I have been present to them at all times and everywhere.... For I said: I will **remain** with you.... Hence I was spiritually always with My Own and will remain with them until the end of time.... However, in those days I informed people of My return, of My coming in the clouds. Consequently, this return should be understood such that people will be able to see Me, just as My disciples saw Me ascend to heaven. Spiritually I Am indeed always with you humans if you prove yourselves worthy of My presence. But I will return bodily, albeit not in My earthly body, yet nevertheless visibly to those to whom I want to return.... But since I announced My return, you humans can also expect it with certainty if you believe My Word and belong to those who will experience the final end. I did not make this promise without reason before My ascension into heaven. I foresaw humanity's spiritual state during the last days, I also saw the tremendous adversity of the believers who want to remain faithful to Me and who will be put under extreme pressure, and I saw their struggle, the most severe battle people will have to fight for the sake of My name.... I saw their will and the great danger of having to stand firm amid devils. For this reason I promised to them My personal help, which I will indeed render when the time has come. I Myself will come to My Own and support them in the last battle. And thus many may be able to behold Me, for I will always be present where the adversity is immense and My Own need Me.... they will see Me as a human being of flesh and blood, yet not born of a woman, instead I will come from above and clothe Myself with a visible form for you, so that you will be able to endure Me.... And everyone beholding Me will be permeated by strength and survive the last battle on earth.... But then I will come in the clouds in order to fetch My Own home into the kingdom of peace. This coming will take place in the same way but in reverse to the order through which My ascension to heaven happened. I will descend to earth in radiant light.... yet enshrouded by clouds in order to be visible to you.... and gather My Own in order to save them from utmost adversity and distress on part of the underworld's demons as well as from the ultimate act of destruction to which everything alive in, on and above the earth will fall prey. However, this coming in the clouds will also only be visible to those who belong to My Own, for My adversary's followers will be unable to see Me. It will be a spiritual return and yet also physically perceptible, but only by those who are spiritually reborn, who have a profound and living faith and therefore also accept both My constant presence until the end of the world as well as My visible return without doubt, because they are taught by their heart, the spiritual spark in the person, and consequently belong to those with whom I will remain until the end of time.... They believe that I will come back and I will not disappoint their faith....

Amen

The Coming of the Lord (to be understood literally)....

B.D. No. 6037

August 29th 1954

The hour of My return comes ever closer, for the end of the earth is near, and once the last day has come, I, too, will come in the clouds in order to fetch My Own before the earth's destruction ensues.... However, this is not to say that Earth will cease to exist as a planet, instead, only its surface will go through a complete transformation which for you humans is nevertheless the same as a complete destruction, since nothing alive will escape this destruction because all creatures will be affected. This is why I can come to Earth Myself in order to save My Own from this final work of destruction, for apart from My believers there will be no-one else who survives the final work of destruction and thus might be able to describe it afterwards. I Myself will come when My Own can no longer see a way out, when on account of their faith My adversary will openly proceed against them. They will experience serious difficulties until the end, and only their firm faith will keep them going and able to resist, for they will await My coming and I will not disappoint their faith. I will appear in brightly radiating light and yet soften My brilliance so that My Own will be able to endure it.... Nevertheless, that which will trigger great joy and jubilation in My Own will cause panic in the others and be their judgment.... For although they will be unable to see **Me**, they will nevertheless notice the unusual occurrence that the people they had pursued will disappear upwards before their eyes.... And

this experience will become their judgment, for suddenly they become aware of their wickedness and also convinced that they are facing the certain end, which they cannot escape. Were they able to behold Me in this hour, they would certainly all stretch out their hands to Me.... Yet this handing-themselves-over to Me would be utterly pointless, because it would be an enforced faith caused by the supernatural phenomena of Me Myself.... Yet even the rapture of My Own could still let their belief in Me arise at the last minute, I would truly be merciful to them before the very end.... However, they will already be too ensnared by the adversary and will no longer be able to release themselves, hence they will descend into the earth and a renewed banishment in solid matter will be their self-inflicted fate.... Almost all people will doubt My Coming on the day of Judgment.... And yet, My promise will come true.... I will come to you and you will be able to behold Me in splendour and magnificence. For My Own truly have earned their deliverance from profound adversity and because nothing seems supernatural to them anymore which relates to the end they recognised as certain. The end will come, and I Myself will descend to earth just as I once ascended to heaven.... in all glory and visible again to those who believe in Me, who are My disciples in the last days before the end. These are not metaphorical Words, not parables for future events.... they are the events themselves and it will literally happen as I have promised you, and you can await it every day when you are extraordinarily besieged by those who are enslaved by My adversary.... As soon as the battle of faith begins you will know that the last hour has come, for this will be his final act, it will be the last battle on Earth which will end with his ultimate defeat.... Then a time of peace will commence on the new earth, for with My coming to Earth and your rapture this period on Earth will end and a new one will start.... The Earth will be transformed and changed into a totally new one and you, whom I will fetch, shall be the new inhabitants of this paradise-like world.... a time of peace and heavenly bliss shall be your fate in the paradise of the new Earth....

Amen

Unification with Jesus Christ and following Jesus

Philosophy of life with Jesus Christ....

B.D. No. 2304

April 16th 1942

Only a philosophy of life affirmed by Jesus Christ and therefore based on the divine doctrine of love will be a blessing for a nation and guarantee its spiritual as well as earthly flourishing. A nation which adopts such a philosophy of life remains profoundly united with the One proclaiming the divine doctrine of love, it will mature spiritually and not be subjected to such great afflictions since it makes every effort to live according to God's will and therefore does not require much suffering in order to change. A population which models itself on the divine Redeemer, which acknowledges Him and thus has an affirmative attitude towards Him, does not merely live a worldly life and will therefore not only be interested in material goods but also strive for spiritual possessions, it will live an inner life and strive towards ascent for, due to its faith, it is more knowledgeable, because faith requires loving activity and the latter leads to knowledge. And knowledgeable people consciously live their lives with God, that is, they will never turn away from Him and pay tribute to the world. Hence they will have conquered matter already because, having been seized by the love of God, they see their goal of life in the union with Him. Consequently, a nation which has released itself from matter is highly evolved but will never try to assert itself against other nations. It is peaceful and willing to help, it won't seek to increase its power or try to make an impression, it lives its life quietly and in seclusion, hence, it will have little esteem in the world yet be held in high regard by God. Such a nation will never be able to understand that a different way of thinking could ever establish itself which negates everything of divine origin, which therefore also excludes the divine doctrine of love and wants to replace it with human teachings. Yet the latter will not last long and the nation which adhered to the latter will go under, for nothing will remain that is not of divine origin, which must also include a philosophy of life without Jesus Christ. And even if people wage a battle against Him, they will never be able to destroy His teaching, the divine teaching of love, and a worldview without Christ will destroy itself, just as a nation having adopted this point of view will sooner or later cause its own downfall....

Amen

Did Jesus Christ redeem all people, or are all people redeemed?....

B.D. No. 3277

October 2nd 1944

People read the Word but they do not understand its meaning, and thus misguided teachings due to false interpretations are given by those who want to serve Me, if they do not sincerely unite with Me and first ask for an explanation and, when they receive it, accept it without resistance. People single-mindedly adhere to My Word that I have delivered mankind from sin by My crucifixion.... But they do not comprehend the essence of the Word, they do not comprehend the significance of the act of Salvation. Consequently they do not understand what the human being has to do himself in order to join the flock of those who have been delivered from their guilt of sin by My blood.

I have died for all human beings.... providing they want to accept My act of Salvation.... I have not imposed any restrictions, but people set limitations when they do not acknowledge My act of Salvation. And these people exclude themselves from the circle of those for whom I have died on the cross. Consequently, only the sins of those can be forgiven who allow themselves to be saved through their faith in Me and My death on the cross, whereas the sins of those who reject Me and My act of Salvation are not forgiven, because they do not allow themselves to be purified by My blood, and because they do not want to belong to those for whom I have died. Once again human free will is

decisive, and I abide by this free will. If people's guilt of sin were forgiven without faith in Me and My act of love, then the human being would be placed into a state of freedom against his own will.... But this is in opposition to My order because it counteracts My justice as well as My love, since the person will not use this state to bond with Me nor will he ever regret his sin....

My Word is truth, and no untruth can ever be found in the fact that I have died for all human beings, that I have redeemed all people from their sins.... But their free will has to decide whether they want to be redeemed, whether they want to accept My work of love, because I do not determine the will.... Therefore all of humanity could be free of sin if it believed in My act of Salvation, just as it is and will remain in deepest darkness and subject to their sins if it rejects Me as Redeemer of humanity. And for this reason most of humanity now lives in sin, it is without forgiveness because it no longer acknowledges Me, and thus My act of Salvation has become ineffective for humanity.

Hence the 'forgiveness of sin' should not be misunderstood, it is not applicable to those who are completely apart from Me; not that I Am pushing them away, instead they are distancing themselves from Me, they are fleeing from Me, Who is approaching them and constantly asks for their souls. I provide them with a gift of grace which liberates them from their sin and their guilt, but if they reject this it has no effect on them because they belong to those who are fighting on behalf of My adversary and who are therefore still controlled by him until they allow themselves to be saved by Me.... And thus it is wrong to describe My act of Salvation in a way which suggests that all people are beneficiaries of that which their free will could certainly acquire; but which free will can also throw away by rejecting it and by being totally without faith. Only the person who accepts My gift of grace will also become free of his sins, because I have carried his guilt for him, I have suffered for him and accepted the crucifixion.

Although I have died for everyone, not everyone accepts Me.... I took everyone's guilt upon My shoulders, but not everyone feels guilty and therefore does not place their burden upon Me. And thus they will also be unable to purge their guilt, since it is too immense to do so themselves, because now they are also adding the guilt of rejecting My love.... But how can they hope for the forgiveness of their sins? How can people believe that they can become free of all guilt without their own contribution, without their own will?....

My love's sacrifice for you, the purification of all sin through My blood is an incomprehensibly significant blessing for you humans. But you must also want to receive My love, you should not reject it, otherwise it cannot take effect on you, otherwise I cannot redeem the guilt of sin, otherwise your sins will stay with you until you change your mind and acknowledge Me as your divine Saviour, Who died on the cross to redeem you....

Amen

Acknowledgment or rejection.... Jesus Christ....

B.D. No. 5844

January 3rd 1954

You humans can only acknowledge or reject Me. The latter merely proves your complete unbelief and will have very painful consequences for you, for the rejection of Me means that you are still completely under My adversary's control and openly oppose Me. However, acknowledging Me means being fully and completely on My side and also having entered My eternal order, acknowledging Me means believing in Jesus Christ as the Son of God and Redeemer of the world and living as a disciple of Jesus; acknowledging Me means striving towards Me, the eternal Love, which is only possible through living a life of love, since only this establishes the union with Me.... And thus it will also be understandable to you that I only recognise a Yes or a No and that I cannot be deceived by evasive Words which are used when I Am only professed with words voiced by the mouth without any involvement of the heart.... You do **not** acknowledge Me if your way of life does not reveal your serious striving towards Me, if your way of life lacks love, if you do not hold My image in your heart, if your faith has not yet come so alive that you eagerly work at improving your soul, if you do not turn to Jesus Christ imploring Him for help and grace, if you walk along without Jesus Christ.... In that

case, all your words which intend to demonstrate belief are mere empty phrases, which do not deceive Me regarding your true state of soul and which are synonymous with rejecting Me.... The person who acknowledges Me also lives with Me, time and again he makes contact with Me in thought, he enters into heartfelt dialogue with Me, he lets Me speak to him as his Father for he feels himself as My child, and thus he belongs to My Own who I have won back forever. He belongs to those who are redeemed, for he was only able to attain the strengthen of will to reach Me through the grace of the act of Salvation.... Understand.... the path to Me **can** only lead through Jesus Christ.... No one will reach Me and no one will strive towards Me either if he has not requested the blessings Jesus acquired.... who therefore consciously places himself under the cross of Christ. For he can only seriously strive towards Me when he has come alive through the blessings of the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ, in Whom I became a visible God for you humans. Yet ask yourselves whether and to what extent you seriously strive towards Me, and don't believe that you can be counted as My Own if you are not yet permeated by My spirit of love, if you only outwardly want to show your faith in Me but your way of life lacks all contact with Me.... Words alone will not do, and the affiliation with a Christian denomination does not make you aspirants of My kingdom if you have not yet found the path to Jesus Christ, if you have not yet seriously called upon Him to take mercy upon you who, without Him and His Salvation, are still enslaved by the adversary You must recognise yourselves as being burdened by guilt and confess your guilt to Him and appeal to Him for salvation for the sake of the blood He shed on your behalf.... Then you will belong to those who voice a loud Yes when the Father's call of love rings out, you will belong to those who hurry towards Him, who have separated themselves for good from My adversary, who love Me with all their heart and enter into marriage with Me.... who will remain My Own for all eternity....

Amen

Belief in Jesus Christ.... Christ's suffering....

B.D. No. 5847

January 7th 1954

No person on earth is able to judge Christ's suffering as Jesus experienced it, because the physical pain was accompanied by indescribable spiritual torment, for which a person has no understanding as long he himself has not been spiritualised. No person will therefore be able to claim of having suffered the **same** agonies, because the agonies of soul far surpassed the physical pain.... since Jesus carried humanity's entire burden of sin and was the centre of the battle against evil forces which He had challenged Himself. This darkness made his soul of light tremble and His soul suffered far greater torment than His body.... And this appalling agony is inconceivable for you humans, even though you know of it, hence you will only realise the magnitude of His act of Salvation in the spiritual kingdom, when your soul is enlightened and it is shown the inconceivable act of compassion.... As long as you live on earth you should simply believe in Him, you should envisage the love of Jesus, the human being, Who took upon Himself an exceedingly painful death merely to help His fellow human beings in their spiritual adversity.... You should envisage that He suffered innocently, that He Himself was the purest and kindest Being on earth and that He, on account of His boundless love, was also full of strength and power.... and yet He forfeited His strength in order to suffer on your behalf.... You should.... whether you can empathise with the depth of His suffering or not.... place yourselves consciously by His side, you should not keep a distance, for through His crucifixion He calls you to Himself.... He only wants you to acknowledge Him as Son of God and Redeemer of the world.... that you believe in His mission, that you believe that God Himself was in the human being Jesus and that His suffering and death on the cross was only permitted by God so that humanity would be redeemed, that the atonement was offered to God for a transgression which could not remain unexpiated according to divine justice and which people would never have been able to absolve themselves of.... You humans should believe that the mission of the man Jesus consisted of bringing God's **love** and His **righteousness** into harmony again and so to re-establish the order which had been revoked through the past sin of rebellion against God.... You should only believe that every human being requires salvation through Jesus Christ, that Jesus' crucifixion was not merely a

historical event but had a **spiritual reason**.... You should believe that **Love** descended to Earth in order to redeem you humans. And you should believe that Jesus, the human being, so abundantly loved God and His fellow human beings, that the Eternal Love was able to manifest Itself in Him and that all miracles and Jesus' wisdom can only be explained in this way.... You should simply believe that Jesus' crucifixion was **more** than a historic event.... and draw your own consequences from it, i.e. by placing yourselves under the cross of Christ and know that you, too, belong to those for whom Jesus accomplished the act of Salvation. You should acknowledge Him as Son of God and Redeemer of the world.... Then your faith will result in your soul's redemption, for it will detach itself from the opposing power, it will feel itself looked after by the Saviour Jesus Christ, for it will learn to love Him and only want to live to please Him.... it will avoid sin and do good works, it will give itself to the One Who has set it free.... and it will profess His name before the whole world....

Amen

Faith and love lead to unification with God....

B.D. No. 8973

May 9th 1965

If you bear My infinite love in mind, which took the most bitter suffering and dying for your sins upon itself in order to open the gate into the kingdom of light for you again, then this act of atonement alone should already induce you to respond to My love with as much depth you are capable of feeling.... Yet precisely this is what you are lacking, you are no longer able to muster such love because My adversary still keeps you in chains and will do whatever he can to prevent your kind-hearted actions. It is not as if you were entirely **incapable**, because you shelter a tiny spark of My love in you which you need only nurture to grow into a bright flame. Yet this requires your will again, which is free and therefore not compelled by Me nor My adversary. And this free will can do anything.... It is able to establish the most heartfelt bond with Me but it can also completely submit to My adversary.... However, even the slightest will for Me is already enough for Me to grant you strength and constantly prove My infinite love to you.... If you therefore call upon Me Myself in Jesus for help against him, your resolve will be strengthened and you will have escaped My adversary, you will strive towards the light, live your life purposefully and indeed reach the final goal, unity with Me.

But what should you do first so as not to live your life in vain?

First, you must believe in a Power Which created you.... If you acknowledge this Power it will be easy for you to establish mental contact with Me, for your belief in Me is already evidence that you want to detach yourselves from your present lord, for he will try to shake any belief you have.... But since you turn to Me of your own accord I will help you take the right path which leads to Me. First of all, I will inform you of the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ, in Whom I became a human being, and explain the significance He has for you.... And as soon as you know that you can always turn to Him, that He and I are as One, you will always hand your guilt, which was the cause of your human existence on earth, over to Him.... From then on you will be able to feel the great love I expect of you, which is needed to enter into union with Me.

Thus you **can** all attain faith in a Being Which is exceedingly powerful, wise and loving.... And when you recognise that this Being is exceedingly perfect you will also be able to love It.... In that case you will also know that you should **strive towards** this Being, that you are still distant from It as a result of your past sin of apostasy, that He wants to win you back again and seeks to attract your love which alone can revoke the original sin when it has been handed over to Jesus Christ, Who has redeemed the guilt of sin on the cross....

Only love can lead you back to Me again, only love is needed to enable you to enter the kingdom of light again, only love returns to you all abilities which you once possessed in abundance and relinquished! Love alone is the bond between Me and you, for it is your fundamental element, just as **I Myself** Am love.... Consequently, if you believe in Me, then the spark in you, which brings this faith into being, has already come alive and it will flare up ever more frequently and finally lead to unity.... Therefore, believe that I exist, that I have created you as well as everything you see around you, and

you won't be able to help yourselves but to make mental contact with Me and thereby receive strength, you will become knowledgeable. That is, the right thoughts will flow into you so that you will know the truth, for the result of transferring My strength of love is that you may also have an insight into previously closed spheres.... However, it always depends on your degree of love....

Therefore, let love become active in you, for love is everything; it gives you clarity of thought as well as the strength to implement what benefits your soul. It will take you to Jesus Christ, and once you have recognised Me in Jesus Christ you will assuredly also take the path towards perfection, you will return into your Father's house from which you once voluntarily distanced yourselves....

Amen

Jesus' name defeats the demon....

B.D. No. 6169

January 19th 1955

You can charge the demon in My name to leave and you will be free of him.... You have a safe means in the name of your Lord and Saviour which, if it is voiced with utter faith, is extremely powerful against all evil forces besieging you on the instructions of the one who is My adversary. They will **have** to leave you if you confront them with the strength of My name, for they avoid it so as not to be destroyed.... Hence you need only ever hand yourselves over to the divine Saviour and Redeemer Jesus Christ.... you need only ever call upon Me or want Me to be present with you and protect you against evil and nothing bad will be able to encroach upon you, because My will repels all forces which intend to harm you.... however, always providing that you want to be **My Own**, that you have the sincere will to attain Me Myself and My favour....that you therefore consciously strive towards Me.... Admittedly, in that case My adversary will attack you even more fiercely, he will try to push you away from Me by using any means at his disposal and portray his kingdom as worth striving for.... he will approach you under a mask and present what he expects of you as palatable as possible in order to confuse your mind, so that you will believe that it cannot harm you. He will always find the right meant to entice you, yet you will assuredly recognise him as well as his game of deceit as long as you seek a connection with **Me**.... You should always call upon Me, you should always pronounce the name of Jesus with heartfelt sincerity if you are in doubt or feel threatened by My adversary.... Just don't eliminate Me from your heart, for then My adversary will have an easy game and you will succumb to his wishes....On your own you are often too weak to resist Him, for this reason you should call for help upon the One Who knows Him and Who is his Lord.... A heartfelt call will liberate you from him, the name of Jesus works wonders if it is voiced with profound faith.... for thereby you call upon Me Myself, your God and Father of eternity, Who will truly not let you fall prey to the one against whom He fights for your souls, if your souls want to attain Me of their own accord....

Amen

Strengthening of will through Jesus Christ.... Assessment of will....

B.D. No. 7035

February 6th 1958

The will is enough where the deed cannot be implemented.... For you humans are judged according to your inclination of **will**.... However, this does not absolve you becoming active, from employing your will, providing the latter is feasible. For words alone are not enough, your resolve must be serious, and a serious will indeed do whatever is within a person's power.... but that you will also be given strength as soon as I recognise your serious will goes without saying, otherwise I would be unable to hold you to account for omissions you could have acted upon. Nevertheless, you need help in order to be able to make a firm decision in the first place.... The only purpose of your earthly life is your free decision of will, but you would hardly make the right choice were this will not strengthened through Jesus Christ. Although every person is capable of direct his will towards Me, he would nevertheless repeatedly succumb to weakness of will again and therefore often fail to implement his will; yet changing his will towards Me already enables Me to guide him to the Salvation work's source of divine grace.... it enables Me to provide him with strength and to influence

him through My spirit, so that he will be impelled into actions of love.... And thus he can already receive an influx of strength if he complies with this inner urging. But only through help by Jesus Christ will assured spiritual progress be possible, otherwise his will would keep flagging again as a result of My adversary's temptations, who still has power over a person as long as he is not yet released from his guilt of sin. All the same, a will inclined towards Me is very highly valued by Me and I won't rest until the human being has taken the path to the cross.... For I truly have sufficient means at My disposal in order to achieve this, if only the person allows his thoughts **of Me** to take effect in him. Then I will also be entitled to fight for this person against My adversary. If, however, a person approaches Jesus Christ consciously, his resolve will not so easily weaken anymore, for then he will consciously pursue the goal and also always let the deed follow the will and thus ascend and attain maturity of soul. For Jesus Christ's help does not solely consist of strengthening the will but also in the creation of opportunities to actively practise neighbourly love.... However, My adversary knows how to limit even kind-hearted activity, he understands how to harden his followers' hearts such that they will prohibit loving actions for their fellow human beings. And these followers are real vassals of Satan.... For they decisively intervene in the spiritual development.... However, they won't achieve their purpose, for where people's loving activity is prohibited I assess the will and credit it like an accomplished deed. And My adversary will manage to achieve that My divine commandments of love will be repealed where the will is still so weak that it does not offer inner resistance. Yet I evaluate the human being's heart and not the externally visible deed.... but neither do I absolve anyone able of implementing this deed from accomplishing it.... Thus you have yet another explanation, that and why I expect actions of love from you, that and why the serious **will** to help is judged in the same way where the action must necessarily be omitted. Yet I Am not satisfied with the will alone which, without becoming active, is lacking the required sincerity. However, as long as you have not yet taken the path to Jesus Christ, your resolve will still be very weak, therefore you should avail yourselves of the blessings of the act of Salvation in order to come out of this weakness of will. But then you will pursue your goal with great vigour by complying with My will: To become absorbed in love for Me and your fellow human beings and to thereby acquire the heavenly kingdom for yourselves....

Amen

Forgiveness of sin through Jesus Christ....

B.D. No. 7442

October 31st 1959

All of you can procure My forgiveness of your sins if only you sincerely desire it and take your path to Me in Jesus Christ, Who died on the cross for all your sins. I carried an immense burden of sin to the cross, for I carried the sins of the whole human race, past, present and future.... It consisted of humanity's original sin as well as all sins every individual person has committed on earth.... I shouldered all guilt and walked with it to the cross.... And regardless of how severe a sin is, I took it upon Myself because I wanted to redeem you from your every guilt, I wanted to restore your purity of heart which alone enables you to approach Me again and allows you to behold Me face to face.

I wanted to cleanse you all of your guilt, I wanted to pay penance for all the sins which weighed you down and kept you irrevocably separate from Me, because I cannot unite Myself with sin.... For this reason I redeemed all guilt through My act of Salvation but I require every person's own will to become redeemed. Consequently, every human being must recognise his guilt of sin, which keeps him far removed from Me, and he must appeal to Me for forgiveness of his guilt.... For without his own admission of his guilt and the plea for forgiveness he will not acknowledge the sacrifice on the cross by the man Jesus and his guilt of sin cannot be forgiven.

Hence you must want to become redeemed and with this will come to Me in Jesus Christ and appeal to Me for your deliverance.... Then you will be free from all guilt, from weakness and the bondage in which My adversary has kept you for an infinitely long time.... You will be free from darkness, for the light of Christ will illuminate you, love will be kindled in you and flare up into a bright flame, for the

one who lacks all love has no more control over you, and the One Who is Love Itself has come to you and lets His light shine into your hearts because they have become pure, because Jesus Christ has atoned for the sin and your heart has become 'God's temple' as soon as you live in love.... And once you are redeemed from all guilt through Jesus Christ, you will also live a life of love according to His will and I can take abode in your hearts, which you have prepared as a temple for Me through love....

But first you must inevitably have attained and received the remission of your sins. The sincere desire for it will also guarantee complete forgiveness, for Jesus Christ hears every cry rising to Him from a heart burdened by guilt.... I hear you and gladly comply with your desire, I remove your sin and draw you to My heart, because you now belong to the redeemed for whom I shed My blood on earth. I only require your admission of guilt and that is not difficult, for you all know that you are weak and wretched creatures which still live in slavery and spiritual darkness as long as they don't find salvation through the love of Jesus Christ, in Whom I embodied Myself on earth.

Jesus, the man, so loved his fellow human beings that He wanted to sacrifice Himself for the sins of every human being He wanted to redeem the sins in order to open the path to the Father again, Who dwelled in Him.... His love was so great that He wanted to help every person attain beatitude, which can only be found with the Father.... and His love made Him take upon Himself the bitterest suffering and dying in order to atone for the guilt which had created an insurmountable gulf between Myself and the beings and which had to be bridged first, and this was done by Jesus Christ through the act of Salvation and His immeasurable love. He established the connection between the human race and Myself, He helped them to reach the Father and shed His blood on the cross for all sins so that all people can become blessed....

Therefore you should sincerely desire to be released from your guilt of sin, recognise and admit your guilt, carry it to the cross and call upon the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ for forgiveness. And you will be able to enter the kingdom of light in a purified state when your life on earth is over.... you will walk the path to Me, to the Father, which Jesus Christ walked ahead of you, which was started by His love and which must be taken by everyone who wants to become blissfully happy....

Amen

The path under the cross must be taken by all people....

B.D. No. 8983

May 26th 1965

You cannot be told often enough that you must all take the path to the cross, and neither can I release you from this path to the cross because you are all burdened by the guilt of sin for which Jesus, the human being, made

Amends, and because, until you do, you cannot enter the kingdom of light which only **He** can open for you. Consequently, the knowledge of the reasons and the significance of the act of Salvation must time and again be conveyed and explained to you humans, for your belief in it is only very weak now, time and again people will deem it a myth they are supposed to believe but which cannot be proven historically. But Jesus came into the world for the sake of an important mission, and He indeed accomplished this mission by walking the most gruelling path to the cross, by placing the whole of humanity's sins upon His shoulders and enduring the most bitter suffering and pain of death on the cross, which opened the door to the kingdom of light for all souls who place themselves under His cross, who want to belong to those who are redeemed, who confess their sins to Him and appeal to Him for forgiveness. For only the free will to accept the act of Salvation and its blessings will loosen the shackles which keep you chained to the one you once followed voluntarily and thereby sinned against Me.... The evidence for this can no longer be given to you people, you must **believe** that the man Jesus died the most agonising death on your behalf in order to do penance for Me. However, you will be able to muster this belief and time and again discover it through My spirit, so that you can also advocate this belief with conviction, for precisely this working of the spirit in a person has only become possible through Jesus' death on the cross.... through the act of Salvation, so that a person's abilities, which had laid dormant in him while he was still burdened by his original sin, can break

through again. This working of the spirit will continually take place.... People will always be able to receive the information about the great work of mercy which was accomplished by the man Jesus for the sake of the original sin....

It was not merely the act of a human being, as I Myself sheltered in the man Jesus and thus redeemed your guilt.... Love impelled Him to take the immense suffering upon Himself.... I Myself was this Love and I was able to so completely permeate Jesus, the man, that therefore **Love Itself** accomplished the act of Salvation.... that the human being Jesus was only a shell for Me in order to **visibly** suffer and die for people, because, as God, I was incapable of suffering. Nevertheless, He kept His body so as to, in unity with Me, be and remain a visible God for all My living creations. And thus you will now understand that no-one can avoid the cross if ever he wants to return into the kingdom of the blessed spirits. You will understand why the original sin will keep you apart from Me forever, and that, for the sake of My justice, I cannot redeem it in any other way than through the acknowledgment of the greatest sacrifice of love and an appeal for forgiveness.... Only then will you be able to return into your Father's house, which you once left of your own free will by following the one into the abyss who is an enemy of all life and who wants to keep you in a state of death.... However, you have free will and can just as easily take the path to Me, to Jesus Christ, in order to be and remain eternally happy. I cannot deprive you of your freedom of will, but neither can My adversary force you to submit to him, you must make your own decision; consequently, Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation will be pointed out to you time and again, you will be informed of His path of suffering, His bitter and painful death on the cross, to make you aware of the fact that you yourselves have been the cause of this act of atonement and subsequently take the path under His cross, voluntarily confess your guilt to Him and appeal to Him for forgiveness. And My infinite love will acquit you of your guilt, My infinite love, which sheltered in the man Jesus, will loosen your fetters and open the gate through which you may enter into My kingdom of light and bliss, where you can be permeated again by My light of love, as it was in the beginning.

Amen

Following Jesus.... A life of love and self-denial....

B.D. No. 3920

November 1st 1946

Anyone who is not as gentle and patient as Me, who does not practise his discipleship by discarding all attributes which conform to My adversary, who does not persistently strive for virtues that are the hallmark of a divine being, will hardly reach the goal of finding unification with the eternal Father Who is pure love Himself and Who can only unite with living creations which, like Him, have become love. My life on earth should serve you as an example, for as a human being I was subject to the same temptations as you because I had to take the only path which could lead a soul into perfection....

Like you, I had to fight against all longings of the flesh as well as against all attributes of an ungodly being or My life could not have served you as an example if I had been born without all human flaws and able to bypass the test of My will. I had to experience the depths of earthly life, i.e. I had to have the opportunity to voluntarily refrain from the same physical sins and avoid all incentives for them.... I had to fight against carnal longings and thereby strengthen and prepare the soul in Me to unite with the spirit. The sinfulness in My surroundings often sorely tested My love and patience, yet I wanted to remain gentle and whole-heartedly humble without exalting Myself.... And I took pity on My fellow human beings' weakness for not resisting temptations, and My love intensified.... I wanted to help those on the ground unable to get up by themselves.... For being human Myself I knew a person's weakness, and this knowledge increased My kindness and patience.

Being human Myself I was at all times able to put Myself into the situation of a sinful person's soul even though I Myself was without sin, even though I Myself, by virtue of My will, had remained victorious over all temptations of body and soul. Yet I took the strength to do so from love, and every person practising love will also muster the strength and resolve to fight against his faults and

weaknesses, and he will also be victorious, for love itself is strength.... And therefore, every actively loving person will also practise all virtues which denote a divine being: he will be gentle and patient, merciful, peaceable, humble and just.... For if he meets a fellow human being with love his thoughts are loving too, and he fights all weaknesses and faults with ease. Follow Me.... live a life of love and self-denial like Me and you will release yourselves from all sinful longings, you will not become subject to sin yourselves, you will bring yourselves into line with the nature of eternal love and already find union with it on earth, and the attainment of your goal will be certain for you. Hence, like Me, you too have to take the cross upon yourselves at all times, and you should not become impatient, for if you sincerely appeal for My help I will help you carry it, and the more willingly the soul carries the cross imposed on it by the Father's love for the sake of its full maturity, the sooner it will deliver itself from earthly longings.

Follow Me and take My life on earth as an example, and you will never become subject to sin again, you will release yourselves by virtue of your determination and love, you will become free and infinitely happy beings, equipped with all divine characteristics, you will be full of light and strength in the spiritual kingdom and live blissfully happy in eternity....

Amen

Low spiritual level.... Test of faith.... Battle.... Rapture....

B.D. No. 8017

October 13th 1961

My Own, too, will have to suffer adversities because their faith shall become increasingly stronger when, time and time again, I will lead them out of their predicament. For they shall persevere until the end and thus need a strong and unwavering faith from which they will then draw the strength for their resistance. The battle against faith will come last but this will be brutally waged.... A living faith, however, will offer resistance to it, for then you will be so closely connected to Me that you will not fear anything, regardless of what the adversary will do in order to bring you down. A strong faith is a living bond with Me.... Then I will no longer be the distant God for you but I will be your Father Who is with His child, which therefore cannot be anxious anymore since it knows itself to be safe in His protection. This will then be proof of who belongs to My church, which I founded **Myself**.... of whose faith is like Peter's, a faith which does not waver irrespective of how many onslaughts are undertaken.... It will be proof of who is closely united with Me, who knows the truth and therefore also My eternal plan of Salvation. And they will fearlessly face up to everything that will be done against them. You, who are My Own, will recognise ever more clearly that the end is not far away, and you should also look at the world with open eyes; then you will recognise the low spiritual level which soon cannot sink any lower and for that reason necessitates an end.

However, the day has been determined for eternity and will definitely be adhered to. Yet people will incredulously want to reject your announcements, they will barely listen to you when you admonish and warn them, they will make plans for the future and will not want to let go of them, they will only ever think in a purely earthly way and pay no attention to spiritual reproaches.... And therefore they will be taken by surprise by the coming event and also experience the end unprepared unless My final wake-up call still lets them find Me and change their way of life. And against the background of all these events you, who are and want to remain My Own, will have to be forearmed. Your faith must not start to waver; you must be as steadfast as a rock.... And I want to help you gain this faith by allowing you to experience My help ever more obviously when you are in great distress. I truly will not leave you because you handed yourselves over to Me and want to be of service to Me. But I also know what demands will still be made on you in the last days and I want to prepare you such that you can do justice to everything, that you will have the strength of faith at your disposal which is your fortitude no matter what will happen. Whatever you are lacking still requires My help; every one of you still has to be taught by Me because it is My will that you shall persevere, that you will prove yourselves in all temptations, that you will come to Me in every adversity and faithfully rely on Me and My help.... Time and again you shall be allowed to experience Me, time and again you must feel My love and

might, I want to be present for you at all times so that your bond with Me grows ever stronger, and then you will no longer be at risk of failing, for I will keep hold of you and protect you from My adversary, regardless of his actions against you. The final battle on this earth will be short because I Myself will shorten the days for the sake of the elect.... But it will irrevocably happen, after all it concerns the final separation of the sheep from the goats.... My Own will openly have to testify to Me before the world, and they will truly have the strength to make this public confession, because in awareness of My presence they will not fear the adversary.... and because they will face him with an abundance of strength and will not be afraid to speak when a confession is demanded of them. And even if it then seems to appear as if the adversary is winning.... he will not be able to kill you for I Myself will come in the clouds.... I Myself will rescue you from utmost adversity, I will lift My Own up to Me and constrain My adversary again for a long time.... I will put an end to his activity.... I will lift My Own up to heaven and then accomplish the work of the transformation of earth, so that a new period of Salvation can begin and the spiritual beings' process of development will be able to continue according to the eternal plan of Salvation....

Amen

Contact with Jesus Christ in every adversity....

B.D. No. 6363

September 23rd 1955

You humans must be in heartfelt contact with Jesus Christ if you want to release yourselves from all flaws and weaknesses, from vices and cravings, from all kinds of bad habits.... if you want to become perfect. He alone can help you achieve it, and He will do so if you appeal for it and thereby testify to your faith in Him as the divine Redeemer. Therefore, as soon as you have to struggle, as soon as you are inwardly dissatisfied with yourselves, turn only to Him, for He fully understands every human weakness, because He lived on earth Himself as the human being Jesus.... But He also has the means to help you.... He strengthens your will and gives you the necessary strength for it from His treasure of grace, which He acquired through His death on the cross.... You will not take the path to Him in vain, you will definitely receive help if only you desire help.... And thus you should always take care to establish and maintain the connection with Him. No-one else can grant you help, He alone can and also wants to do so, because it is His Own will that you should become free from all shackles which pull you down, it is His Own will that you should regain your past perfection, so that He can admit you into His kingdom when you must leave this earth. He wants you to return into your Father's house to become as happy again as you were in the beginning.... For this reason He will do everything in His power to make this return possible for you, and He will not hold back His gifts of grace, for He descended to earth in order to help you, because you were no longer capable of ascending to the light on your own.... He died for you humans on the cross and does not want to have made this sacrifice in vain, it is His will that all people shall partake in the blessings of the sacrifice on the cross.... that they will all reach the goal for which He sacrificed Himself....

However, you must come to Him yourselves, you must entrust yourselves to Him in your distress and appeal for His help and it will be given to you. For this reason you should always become conscious of His presence.... You need only call Him to your side with a thought and He will walk beside you wherever you go.... The mental contact with Him will assure His presence, and if Jesus Christ is close to you, you will speak to Him like a brother and confide in Him; tell Him everything that bothers you, but let your requests be more of a spiritual nature, even though you will also receive His full support in earthly adversities.... But first consider the state of your soul and, if you discover imperfections, approach Jesus Christ trustingly with the plea to release you from every shackle, from every evil which separates you from Him. Treat Jesus Christ with the same familiarity as you treat your brother, and don't be shy to reveal even your most secret faults and sins to Him. His love is infinite and He will forgive them and help you achieve complete freedom because you acknowledge Him, because you believe in Him and His act of Salvation. Yet no-one who excludes Him from his life, who does not acknowledge Jesus' act of Salvation and God's human manifestation in Him, can cope with his faults and vices by himself, for he will lack all strength and his resolve to seriously

tackle the work of changing his nature will be weak.... He will not be able to achieve anything until he has entrusted himself to the divine Redeemer.... for every person who wants to be released from the control of God's adversary must call upon Jesus Christ and hand himself over to Him with complete trust.... Only then can he be saved, only then will he have the strength to change himself in order to enter the spiritual kingdom in a redeemed state, in order to return into the Father's house for good....

Amen

Following Jesus.... Patiently bearing the cross....

B.D. No. 7622

June 15th 1960

You demonstrate that you follow Me when you patiently accept the suffering which My love places upon you so that your souls will mature. Always remember that I requested you to follow Me with the Words '.... let him take up his cross and follow Me....' I certainly want to help you carry your cross but you should not try to throw it away completely, you should always consider that you can remove many impurities from your soul if you patiently carry your cross. I will always give you the strength for it if you ask Me, for I Am always close to you if you live in My discipleship on earth. And you don't have much time left.... Therefore you will have to endure increased suffering because I want to help you attain a degree of light while you are still on earth which will enable you to enter into beatitude when your end has come. But always remain in contact with Me through loving activity, prayer and constant thinking of Me, for then I will always be able to be close to you and you can safely follow your path even if you have to carry a small cross. However, a steady life in carefree tranquillity would not be beneficial for you unless you were so extraordinarily lovingly active that your soul's process of maturing would be successfully accomplished.... But you are all still too half-hearted in your kind-hearted actions and therefore gain too little for your soul, and thus the suffering must contribute towards your purification process. And always remember the terrible suffering I have taken upon Myself on your behalf.... You yourselves would have had to endure this suffering on account of your guilt of sin and you would have been incapable of doing so. This is why I accepted the guilt on your behalf and suffered indescribably because I love you and wanted to endure the suffering on your behalf. Then your cross will seem small to you, you will gladly carry it because you want to follow Me, and you will safely enter through the gate into the kingdom of light because I pave the way and open the gate for you so that you will be blissfully happy. Accept your cross, that is, patiently and for love of Me carry all suffering which burdens you, but which is needed for your maturity of soul, for one day the soul may take pleasure in the light, one day the cross it had to carry will seem an easy one. Let Me walk by your side, then I will help you carry and you will not feel the burden so much. And I Am with every person who calls upon Me in thought, I only wait for this call because I cannot take effect in you against your will despite My love for you. But I will never leave you alone and even the cross placed upon you is proof of My presence, because I thereby gently admonish you to follow Me, Who took all of humanity's suffering upon My shoulders and walked the path to the cross with it. Therefore be patient, no matter what weighs you down, My love will strengthen you, My love will relieve you from the cross when the time is right....

Amen

Jesus Christ, leader on the right path....

B.D. No. 5733

July 28th 1953

The right path will truly be pointed out to you if only you are willing to take it. In that case you just have to let yourselves be guided by Me and you will be urged onto the right path, because I Am only waiting for you to take stock of yourselves, so that you want to achieve what is your real task on earth and live a right and righteous life on earth. Then I will take over your guidance Myself, for your present will entitles Me to do so. As the man Jesus I walked this path as an example for you, as the man Jesus I showed you the goal which you, too, ought to pursue; as the man Jesus I demonstrated to you what a human being can achieve if he takes this path.

And therefore I keep making His earthly progress clear to you, I draw your attention to Him, Whom I sent to earth to help you take the same path, because this is the only path which will lead to Me, to your God and Father of eternity. He had achieved the goal on earth, He ascended to heaven as a perfected being, as the cover of Myself, and I enabled My disciples on earth to witness this process so that they would have a testimony of what a human being can achieve on earth, so that they were able to behold Me Myself in Jesus Christ, Who had entered into eternal unity with His heavenly Father and thus was united with Me for all eternity.... And I want all of you to unite with Me, I want all of you to return to Me as My children, that all of you take the only path which leads into the Father's house from whence you once originated.... You, however, wander around and don't know this path, you cannot find it because you are not looking for it, you live on earth oblivious of your purpose, you walk on a broad road which will never lead to the goal because it is not the path which Jesus had taken. And therefore I have to keep sending you messengers to show you the right way, who want to guide you onto the right path.

I have to make the Word of Jesus Christ accessible to you humans, which He taught on My instruction on earth, the Word which I spoke through Him to people who listened because they believed in Me, Who spoke through Him. This Word of His will direct you to the right path again, and you have to listen to this Word because it gives evidence of Me, Who is the path Himself, the truth and the life. And if you listen to this Word the path to the goal will be shown to you.... and no-one will be able to say that he had been without guidance on earth if he just entrusts himself to Me, if he wants to reach Me and has the will, not to stand still, but to attain the goal which was given to him for his earthly life. References are made to you time and again because I will not abandon any human being to his fate but Am concerned that they all shall find the right path, however, I cannot take care of someone who lives without a sense of responsibility, for in order to be able to lead him he has to entrust himself to Me of his own free will. Where this will is missing I will keep Myself back....

Yet it will always be made easy for him to enter the right path, no compulsion will ever be exercised.... I always demand his free will in order to be able to take his hand and lead him to ascent.... for I can certainly advise and help you yet I will never compel you....

Amen

Call daily upon the name of Jesus....

B.D. No. 7129

May 24th 1958

With Me and in My name you shall start every day, deal with every undertaking and thus fulfil your daily tasks, and you can also be certain that your work will be blessed, be it earthly or spiritual activity. But as soon as you walk alone, that is, without having asked for My assistance, you will do a lot of pointless work, you will have to struggle with difficulties or it will not always be successful. Just a heartfelt thought of Me will already assure My assistance, and if you consciously call upon Me for My blessing and support then everything will turn out just right by itself, and you will be able to calmly carry out your day's work. You should always know that you are besieged by dark forces which are able to access you if you fail to surround yourselves with a protective wall by calling upon My name, by appealing to Me for blessing your work. And once they have gained access to you it will be far more difficult to repel them again than it would be if you had refused access to them from the start. For they weaken you will, which can only catch up with what it had neglected to do by summoning all its strength: by calling to Me for help.

The battle for your souls is constantly fought, and your victory is often made difficult by these dark forces, but this is frequently up to yourselves, because you can request unlimited strength and should always do this through heartfelt prayer for My guidance, My protection and My blessing.... This is why you should never start your daily work without Me, you should call My name in your heart, appeal for reinforcement of your will and completely hand yourselves over to Me.... Then I can protect you from your souls' enemy, then you will be surrounded by countless beings of light who will refuse to admit him, then you will cheerfully and free of worry carry out your daily work in the

awareness of strength and inner peace. And then nothing will be able to upset you anymore because you know that I Am always present and arrange everything.

The inner bond with Me is the best guarantee for bringing all your plans to fruition, be they earthly or spiritual affairs, for then I Myself can always influence you and your thoughts and direct your actions such as is right and beneficial for you. Yet as soon as you isolate yourselves from Me, as soon as you loosen the connection, different thoughts transmitted by My adversary will begin to dominate you and deprive you of your inner calm, they will worry you and leave you open to bad forces which will continue the work of inner disintegration and discord, so that even your daily work will not be blessed and your soul will be at risk of being captured by him.

And again, you can only release yourselves from this danger if you take refuge in Me, for I Am ready to help you in your spiritual difficulty at all times. But without Me you cannot free yourselves from him and his influence, without Me you are too weak and therefore at his mercy. However, you can avoid all such pressures if you hand yourselves over to Me and My protection time and again, if you always appeal for My blessing, if you commend your physical and spiritual wellbeing to Me and never neglect to call upon My name.... and thereby openly acknowledge Me in Jesus Christ.... Then you will be erecting a wall which My adversary will not be able to pull down, for he will take flight from Me and My name, and thus he will also let go of you if you just faithfully speak My name in every adversity and danger....

Amen

Redemption by Jesus Christ in the beyond

Jesus Christ opens the gate to eternal life....

B.D. No. 6850

June 12th 1957

The gate into a life of light and glory is open to all of you who have found Jesus Christ; however, it remains closed to those who are still distant from Him and His act of Salvation. Therefore you all should seriously ask yourselves whether you have already taken the path to Him, to the cross; for His path on earth ended with His death on the cross, hence you will have to seek and find Him **there**, and that is where you must go if you want to participate in His act of Salvation. The goal of His life on earth was the cross, because the crucifixion was intended to bring redemption to you humans.

Thus you will find the divine Redeemer under the cross, which means that you will carry your guilt of sin, for which the human being Jesus died on the cross, to Him under the cross, that you will thereby prove your belief in His divine mission and so also reveal your will to be released from the guilt which separates you from Me, your God and Father of eternity.... In that case you acknowledge **Me Myself** Who accomplished the act of Salvation in the human being **Jesus**.... Your path must lead to the cross of Golgotha if you want to reach the gate into eternal life, for no other path leads to this gate. All of you should seriously question your attitude towards Jesus Christ.... However, with the exception of a few, you fail to do so, even if His Gospel is repeatedly proclaimed to you, even if His teaching of love is time and again presented to you and you continue to hear His name mentioned as that of the divine Redeemer.... You keep your ears closed and all Words bypass you like empty talk. You are barely touched by what you hear about Jesus Christ and His labour of love, it does not enter your hearts, it has not yet come alive in you and you have not yet spent any serious thought on what you have received so far. One day you will have to stop short at the gate to eternity, you will not find admittance, for you had not found salvation as yet because you did not take the path to the cross, His blood was unable to cleanse you and therefore you will arrive at the gate to eternity burdened by guilt. It is not enough to merely voice Jesus' name with your mouth in order to be released from your guilt.... You must approach Him yourselves, you must hand yourselves over to Him with childlike trust and in awareness of your fault and sincerely appeal to Him that He should accept you, that He might also have shed His blood for you, and you must faithfully wait for His forgiveness.... And the weight of your guilt will fall away, clearing the path to the light and opening for you the gate into eternal beatitude.... Jesus Christ Himself will escort you into His kingdom, but without Him you will never be able to go through this gate. If only you would believe that His name is everything, that calling upon His name with profound faith will lift you out of all the adversity which is the result of the sin which still weighs you down.... This is why I descended to earth in the human being Jesus, in order to relieve you of the immense burden of sin and I died on the cross in order to redeem the great guilt which makes all of you sigh while you live on earth.... I died on your behalf.... but you must want to belong to those for Whom I have died.... Hence you must also take the path to the cross, you must make contact with Jesus Christ Who concluded His life on earth on the cross.... Then He will walk with you and guide you into His kingdom which He promised to all those who believe in Him....

Amen

Overcoming the gulf in the beyond: Jesus Christ....

B.D. No. 7290

February 22nd 1959

Avast gulf still exists in the spiritual world between those who kept their distance from Me during their life on earth and those who had already found Me and were able to enter the spiritual kingdom in a garment of light. They can certainly see the former and ascertain their miserable state,

but the former are staying in a realm where they can see nothing else but themselves or like-minded spiritual beings whose constant discord and dispute among each other poisons their existence and prevents them from feeling any kind of happiness. Nor will these souls ever be able to see their loved ones again if these have already departed with a higher degree of maturity; instead, they must first reach a certain degree before a blissful reunion can happen.... Hence, such souls inhabit two worlds, although all souls enter the spiritual kingdom after their body's death.... They are two worlds which are very distant from each other, which is not to be understood spatially but merely relates to the nature of each individual world.... A vast gulf exists, and yet, this gulf must be bridged sooner or later. Time and again beings from the kingdom of light must descend unrecognised and try to do their redemptive work on the souls by attempting to persuade them to detach themselves from their environment and to follow the beings of light, which then will aim to lead them ever closer to their own region.... that is, they must inform the souls in darkness of the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ and His immense act of mercy which was accomplished for these souls should they want My mercy for themselves. Only then will the gulf diminish between them and Me, between the kingdom of darkness and the kingdom of light.... Only then will the souls take the path which leads out of the abyss into higher spheres, and only then will the blessings of the act of Salvation take effect on them and gradually also result in a state of maturity where they themselves can and want to do redemptive work, because they want to repay their gratitude, which impels their willingness to help the wretched beings which still linger in the abyss.

The gulf must be overcome and there is only **one** bridge: Jesus Christ, the divine Redeemer.... Anyone who takes the path to Him also takes it to Me, even though he did not want to acknowledge Me on earth or was still vastly distanced from Me. He can only come back to Me by way of Jesus Christ, and He is therefore the bridge which leads from the dark region into the kingdom of light.... This should be remembered by all people who on earth certainly deem themselves to be in contact with Me and who nevertheless have not yet found the right attitude towards Jesus Christ, who only call themselves Christians by name and in reality have not established a heartfelt bond with **Me in Jesus Christ**, who therefore have not yet availed themselves of the blessings of the act of Salvation and so cannot speak of a redemption of their original sin either.... They, too, will face a deep gulf when they arrive in the beyond, for they will first have to seek and find Him, the divine Redeemer, so that He will release them from their guilt as well, for they only acknowledged Him with their mouth on Earth without involving their heart. But I look into the heart, and regardless of how loud and how often the mouth voices My name, I will not be deceived and cannot place the soul where it doesn't actually belong.... It will be confronted by a vast gulf when it passes into the spiritual kingdom.... in other words: It will see nothing else but what its earthly-inclined senses want it to believe, and it will only be to its advantage if it can detach itself quickly and does not resist the helpers' notions, so that it can quickly be introduced to the divine Redeemer as the only Saviour from its situation.... The connection must be made, the soul must take the path to Me by way of Jesus Christ and it will safely be guided by Him through the gate into the kingdom of light when it has bridged the vast gulf, when its will impels it to Jesus Christ and it desires and finds salvation through Him. Then it will also have taken the path to the Father.... I will receive it into My kingdom of light and blissful happiness....

Amen

No beatitude without Salvation through Jesus Christ....

B.D. No. 8784

March 19th 1964

You humans should bear in mind that I want to help you attain the degree of maturity in earthly life which enables you to enter the kingdom of light after you pass away from this earth.... Indeed, sooner or later you will all enter this kingdom, yet the time it will take until then can still cause you inconceivable pain if you enter the realm of the beyond in an entirely unspiritual state and the gates into the realm of light are still closed to you. Although My mercy and grace apply to every single soul even if they lived a sinful life on earth, I cannot provide it with anything else than that which My justice permits, consequently, in the spiritual realm it can only ever take possession of

spheres which correspond to its way of life and will still have to endure inconceivable suffering and agony in order to redeem its guilt of sin. And if it fails to find Jesus Christ in the beyond, its suffering will be endless; it will continue to descend further and will finally have to accept the fate of renewed banishment, because there is no other atonement for the original sin than through Jesus Christ. None of you realise the full significance of the act of Salvation.... And precisely this accounts for your immense spiritual hardship.... I want to help My living creations to find the path to the cross while they still live on earth, for this will guarantee the soul an entirely different fate.... For to attain forgiveness of the sin of guilt before the human being's death is the most worthwhile goal to strive for.... as it opens the gate into the kingdom of light and the soul will be able to enjoy beatitudes in abundance.... However, the human race is not aware of the immense significance the act of Salvation holds and My adversary makes a diligent effort to keep you ignorant.... And even if people believe that the man Jesus had lived on earth in the past, exemplifying to people the most perfect way of life and calling upon them to emulate Him, they still don't want to believe that an exalted mission had been the reason for Jesus' life on earth.... They don't want to believe that it concerned an act of greatest mercy, that Jesus, through His crucifixion, wanted to redeem and indeed redeemed an immense sin, which could not be expiated by any other means than through an act of greater than great love and an inordinate measure of physical suffering.... which thus bridged the vast gulf between the kingdom of light and the realm of darkness. From then on everyone was able to cross this bridge providing he believes in Jesus Christ's act of Salvation as well as My human manifestation in Him. This human manifestation is another enigma which can only be understood by a spiritually awakened person, because people's state of sinfulness rules out all understanding for it, thus a person must first have an affirmative attitude towards Jesus' act of Salvation, appeal for forgiveness of his sin and in heartfelt contact with Him be taught by the spirit within, which can only express itself after the forgiveness of the original sin has taken place.... In that case My human manifestation in Jesus will be understandable to him, for he can be guided by the spirit into all truth and informed of all spiritual correlations.... Hence he can attain the realisation again which he once lost through his rebellion against Me. He will only gain the knowledge of all these correlations through his spirit. This knowledge can nevertheless be presented to a person, and if he received a **truthful** account about Jesus Christ, His act of Salvation and My human manifestation in Him, then the **truth** can also convince a person and make him take the same path, the path to the cross.... And he will better understand what he previously was merely told by an enlightened fellow human being. This is why I consider the spreading of the pure truth so important. It is, after all, My will that this truth shall also reach people who live a good way of life but who do not believe as yet, who will subsequently feel addressed by the truth and affected by the strength of truth and thus can also attain faith.

If you humans realised how much you could improve your fate on entering the kingdom of the beyond if you were redeemed from your guilt of sin by Jesus Christ, you would also grasp why I keep highlighting this problem, why I repeatedly explain the spiritual correlations and try to stimulate your intellect to think about it; for merely the slightest will to fulfil your purpose of life on earth is already sufficient for Me to guide you and create every opportunity for you to gain realisation.... And the final knowledge, especially, can only be granted to you through the working of My spirit, for under My adversary's influence people will always want to negate the most important thing: the **Salvation from all guilt through Jesus Christ**.... They certainly make concessions by admitting to His existence and also portray Him as a human being who attained highest perfection in His earthly life. Yet they do not want to believe that it concerns an entirely different problem.... that **without** Him the human race would forever remain separated from its God and Creator and that the souls' development in the beyond **could not** progress, instead they will remain in a sorry state as long as they are burdened by the original sin. Therefore they lead a wretched and pitiful existence until they find the divine Redeemer on the other side, until they comply with the light beings' efforts and without resistance allow themselves to be guided to Him, Who will lift them up from the abyss and forgive their guilt of sin as soon as they appeal to **Him** for it.... Thus they must first believe **that Jesus Christ redeemed the human race through His act of mercy, through His death on the cross**. Only this substantiates Jesus' mission on earth, but not purely His way of life.... which certainly is part of it, since no person

can become blessed without love, and the teaching of love was the essence of every one of the instructions He gave to people, who He wanted to save from spiritual darkness, from the shackles of the prince of night.

People lived in profound ignorance, they did not recognise themselves as living creations of a supremely perfect Being, they did not notice their imperfection and only loved their own Self, and their selfish love impelled them into sinfulness, into sins they might well have been able to atone for in the beyond, even if it had meant an infinitely long time of suffering.... Yet these sins were not the reason for My descent to earth in the human being Jesus.... instead, it concerned the immense original sin of the past apostasy from Me, which no human being would have been able to atone for, even if he spent eternities in a wretched state.... **This** sin was the reason why I Myself came down to earth and accomplished the act of Salvation in Jesus, the man For **Love Itself** redeemed the guilt, and the Love **was** in the man Jesus.... Time and again I will inform you humans of this through My spirit, time and again I will try to explain to you the greatest mystery of all, and I will send out My disciples during the last days in order to proclaim the truth about Jesus Christ, the Son of God and Redeemer of the world, Who sheltered Me Myself within Him and He and I are, and will remain, as One for all eternity....

Amen

Attaining freedom by the time of the end.... Jesus Christ....

B.D. No. 6700

November 28th 1956

The shackles of captivity can still constrain you for an eternity but you can also discard them very quickly, for you truly have all means at your disposal through the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ Who died for you on the cross. Consider that you will still have to languish for an infinitely long time if you don't make use of the blessings of his act of Salvation, if you don't take refuge in Him Who alone can remove your shackles.... And consider that you are being informed in earthly life of which path you need to follow in order to attain your complete freedom. As long as you live without the knowledge of Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation you cannot call upon Him for help. But this knowledge will be conveyed to all people, although in different ways, and the few who do not receive it, because their souls' maturity has not yet reached the degree which can lead to perfection on earth, will still attain the knowledge of Him in the kingdom of the beyond and can also be released from their shackles if they are of good will. However, the knowledge of Jesus Christ will not remain hidden from people on earth, and where it cannot be given to them from the **outside** it will be conveyed to them through My spirit, which guides people into truth as I have promised.... In order to become aware of the great significance of your transformation on this earth you must know that there **is** a way in order to completely liberate yourselves and to be able to enter the kingdom of light as a blissful being.... that you are all **informed** of this path but that you must also take it. You must all take the path to the cross, you must all hand yourselves over to Jesus Christ in order to be able to enter through the gates into beatitude. But no-one will be able to attain bliss without Jesus Christ; instead, he will have to remain shackled until he decides to take this path to Him, the path to the cross. However, you humans don't have much time left.... consider that you will still be **able** to attain **freedom** in this short time until the end, but that you will also forfeit it again for an infinitely long time if you exclude Jesus Christ, if you.... although you are informed of Him and know about His act of Salvation, you reject Him or remain indifferent towards Him and don't turn to Him for help on the path towards perfection.... You don't realise what gift of grace is available to you, through which you can find deliverance from an eternally lasting confinement, but time and again you are informed of it without meeting your credence. Only through Jesus Christ can you be redeemed from your guilt of sin, from My adversary's control, you don't have to stay under His rule for long anymore, you can release yourselves from him and discard all shackles, for there is One who will help you if only you turn to Him and appeal for His help. And for this you only have a short time at your disposal. If you neglect doing so, you will remain in his control for an infinitely long time to come before you are offered the opportunity again to call upon Him for mercy. Don't extend your time in captivity yourselves, gladly

accept the good news of your salvation through Jesus Christ and appeal to Him so that He might help you achieve deliverance too, so that He might have shed His blood for you as well.... Do not bypass Him, you who know Him. Believe that only He can save you from sin and death and take the last steps of your process of development on this earth by taking the path to the cross of Golgotha.... And in blissful freedom you will be able to lift yourselves into the kingdom of light, where no night will ever exist....

Amen

Jesus Christ means everything....

B.D. No. 6333

August 15th 1955

No-one can become blessed without Jesus Christ.... And yet, countless people reject Him because they have no idea about the significance of His act of Salvation, for even **those** people who profess Him with their mouth must be counted to the former, for the right understanding of the act of love and mercy by the divine Redeemer would make them follow Him on the path leading to beatitude. Even if preaching takes place all over the world, even if people are told time and again that His name is the only life line.... only a very small fraction of them know **what** Jesus, the human being, had done for his fellow human beings and **why** He had done it.... Jesus has only become a Saviour from sin and death for a very few people on earth who, being spiritually enlightened, are aware of the significance of the act of Salvation and who therefore also recognise the immense hardship on earth, who know how distant humanity is from the One Who alone can bestow upon them a life of beatitude Jesus Christ is preached throughout the whole world.... Many people are being addressed by Him directly when He is speaking to them through the mouth of an awakened preacher.... But only a few allow themselves to be captivated by His Words so that they will not leave Him anymore and likewise dedicate their life to proclaiming the name of Jesus.... however, most of them **forget** just as quickly as they get excited.... like a passing fancy which flares up brightly but quickly burns down again.... For Jesus Christ does not come alive in them, He does not find admission into their hearts because they don't live in love.... Only love gives life to faith in Him, without love the knowledge about Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation is nothing **more** than worldly knowledge which has no effect in eternity. For this reason, only a few will feel themselves so affected that they will subsequently become true followers of Jesus, that they will find deliverance from sin and death.... even though the divine Redeemer will not exclude anyone in order to attract him under His cross. He speaks to countless people and will continue to speak to them and admonish them to work at improving their soul, time and again He will proclaim His teaching of love.... Yet He can only come alive in their hearts if they accept His teaching of love and live up to it.... Only then will they understand His act of love and know how much hardship there is on earth.... For death is granted to every person, but death without Jesus Christ signifies a dreadful fate in the beyond, a fate which can only be improved through the divine Redeemer again, otherwise the soul will have to vegetate in darkness, in wretchedness, for an infinitely long time.... **Jesus Christ means everything....** but extremely little to humanity, for it does not make much use of His act of mercy.... because it does not **recognise** Him.... And it **cannot** recognise Him because it is incapable of doing so as long it is lacking love.... and this has grown cold among people. Consequently, love must be preached continuously, the One Who was full of love Himself and sacrificed Himself for His fellow human beings must be referred to. If the human being then makes an effort to fulfil the commandments of love he will also become enlightened as to **why** Jesus died for the human race.... and he will take refuge under the cross and call upon the only One Who can redeem him from sin and death....

Amen

Wherever the opportunity of mentioning the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ presents itself to you, you should speak of Him and emphasise His great significance for every single person.... Where possible, you should motivate people to remember Him, for everyone knows Him, everyone has heard of Him, yet only a few have a living faith in Him, and only they can partake in the blessings of the act of Salvation.... But they are precisely the ones who should try to invigorate their fellow human beings' faith in Him, Who alone can save them from spiritual adversity, which will only be perceptively felt after their body dies. You should not fail to make use of every avenue in order to steer the conversation towards Jesus Christ, even if the other person feels uncomfortable about it.... you should simply ask him what Jesus means to him, whether he has already thought about the doctrines regarding Him and what conclusion he has come to.... Even if they only want accept Him as a human being, Who advocated His own philosophies of life and sacrificed His life for these opinions, you can nevertheless explain to them that He was certainly a man who lived among people, but that He had to fulfil a spiritual mission and that every person can derive benefit from that mission if he wants.... Indeed, most people only regard their life on earth as an end in itself and don't believe in their souls' continuation of life.... Nevertheless, you should also try to unsettle these opinions and truly, I will place the right Words into your mouth if all you endeavour to do is kindle a small light for these blind people, if you want to help them fulfil their purpose of earthly life. If you are imbued by the knowledge which corresponds to the truth, you will time and again feel impelled to convey this knowledge to people and then opportunities will arise where it is possible for you, and I truly bless everyone who tries to persuade his fellow human beings to believe in Jesus, because Jesus must not be by-passed if the soul wants to attain bliss one day when it enters the spiritual realm after physical death. This faith in the soul's continuation of life is likewise lacking in most people, consequently, it is difficult to educate them, yet no stone shall be left unturned, for the misery such souls are approaching is indescribable and if you can help them spare such wretchedness they will be eternally grateful to you, for one day every soul will gain realisation, even if it still takes eternities....

Everything relating to Jesus, His life on earth, His crucifixion and His ascension, is a myth for people which they certainly know, but cannot believe that these events, which are hugely significant for each individual still unenlightened soul, to be true. However, you humans live on this earth to attain the goal of releasing yourselves from every form and entering the kingdom of the beyond in a spiritualised state. But to do so it is crucial that you find redemption through Jesus Christ, that He helps you attain freedom, because only He can loosen the chains which still tie you to God's adversary. He alone can help you attain eternal life, and thus you must acknowledge Him and hand yourselves over to Him so that He will take your immense guilt upon Himself and so that He might have given His blood for you as well, which He shed on the cross for all people, past, present and future. If you accept Him and appeal to Him to take the immense guilt from you, you will also suddenly be able to think differently.... many things you previously were unable to understand will become comprehensible to you. For this reason you should at least accept information about Him when it is conveyed to you, for no-one shall go astray, but it is up to the human being himself whether he **wants** to let himself be saved.... Let yourselves be educated about Jesus and His act of Salvation, about the spiritual reason for it and about your past original sin, which you cannot atone for yourselves but can only be released from through the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ.... And don't walk past Him in earthly life, try to muster the understanding for the kind of mission He had to fulfil on earth and believe that every person must take the path to the cross.... believe that every human being must carry his guilt of sin under the cross, which means, that he must acknowledge Jesus Christ as Son of God and Redeemer of the world, in Whom God Himself became human in order to redeem humanity from sin and death....

Amen

Profess Me and don't hesitate to frankly mention My name when your attitude regarding your faith and Me is demanded of you. For your heartfelt avowal draws Me Myself to your side and all fear will leave you, you will speak candidly and without inhibition about matters of faith, about My teaching, about My working in you and on your behalf and also about the future. Then you will pull down a wall, a wall of silence, behind which much can be concealed and which is therefore suitable for covering-up the truth. Speak fearlessly wherever it may be, for I Myself will take you to where you will be asked to profess Me. Not much more time will pass until you, who still believe in a God, in life after death, will be mocked by the world, for increasingly more worldly people fall away and everything that is neither visible nor tangible is unreal to them. These worldly people will develop an open enmity towards the believers who, as a constant target, can barely protect themselves against the animosities. Nevertheless, it should not make you fearful, it must happen like this because the time is fulfilled when a separation between My Own and the supporters of My adversary takes place, who aims to stifle all faith in Me and by whom they are enslaved. You should know that I Myself Am with you, both in spirit as well as visibly, where necessary.... Know, that you are far stronger than they are, even if there are more of them. For as long as I fight by your side no-one will ever be able to defeat you. Yet you must openly and confidently stand up for Me, so that the enemy will recognise Who provides you with strength, because it will be obvious that you receive exceptional help. Simply voice My name with complete faith if you are being pressured, confront your assailants with My name, call upon Me with your heart and mouth and fear no earthly power.... and I will provide strength to all those of good will, to all who want to be My Own, as I have promised. In the name of your divine Redeemer you possess a weapon which truly cannot be surpassed, because all My love belongs to every person who manages to find faith in Me during the last days.... And anyone who professes Me before the world also proves his unwavering faith to Me and I will take particular care of him. Soon you will be forced to confirm or reject Me, then don't fear the worldly power, instead, merely remember My Words: Whosoever therefore shall profess Me before men, him I will also profess before My Father.... You will be forced to make a decision for Jesus Christ or against Him. Then gladly profess Him before the world, for you can only reach Me through Jesus, only through faith in His act of Salvation and His help can you come close to Me, the Father, Whose love wants to unite itself with everyone as it united with Jesus, Who redeemed the world from sin on account of His infinite love....

Amen